An introduction to Sequential Monte Carlo

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Course based on

de alter service services

Nicolas Chopin Omiros Papaspiliopoulos

An Introduction to Sequential Monte Carlo

2 Springer

(Mis)conceptions about particle filters

 Something useful only for very specific models (hidden Markov models, state-space models);

(Mis)conceptions about particle filters

- Something useful only for very specific models (hidden Markov models, state-space models);
- Or alternatively something as versatile as MCMC

(Mis)conceptions about particle filters

- Something useful only for very specific models (hidden Markov models, state-space models);
- Or alternatively something as versatile as MCMC
- Which one it is?



Let's have a quick look at a particle filter.

Structure

```
Algorithm 1: Generic PF algorithm
Operations involving index n must be performed
 for n = 1, ..., N.
X_0^n \sim \mathbb{M}_0(\mathrm{d}x_0)
w_0^n \leftarrow G_0(X_0^n)
W_0^n \leftarrow w_0^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_0^m
for t = 1 to T do
     A_t^{1:N} \sim \texttt{resample}(W_{t-1}^{1:N})
    X_t^n \sim M_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, \mathrm{d} x_t)
     w_t^n \leftarrow G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, X_t^n)
     W_t^n \leftarrow w_t^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_t^m
```



 All particle filters have (essentially) this structure. (Let's ignore variations based on alternative resampling schemes, etc.)

Comments

- All particle filters have (essentially) this structure. (Let's ignore variations based on alternative resampling schemes, etc.)
- The user must specify:
 - kernel $M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$: that's how we simulate particle X_t^n , given a certain ancestor $X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}$;
 - Function G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t); that's how we reweight/grade particle Xⁿ_t (and its ancestor).

Comments

- All particle filters have (essentially) this structure. (Let's ignore variations based on alternative resampling schemes, etc.)
- The user must specify:
 - kernel $M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$: that's how we simulate particle X_t^n , given a certain ancestor $X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}$;
 - Function $G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t)$; that's how we reweight/grade particle X_t^n (and its ancestor).
- **Easy part: How.** Less easy: **Why**

Introduction to state-space models

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Section 1

Presentation of state-space models

Objectives

The aim of this chapter is to define state-space models, give examples of such models from various areas of science, and discuss their main properties.

A first definition (with functions)

A time series model that consists of two discrete-time processes $\{X_t\}:=(X_t)_{t\geq 0}, \{Y_t\}:=(Y_t)_{t\geq 0}$, taking values respectively in spaces \mathcal{X} and \mathcal{Y} , such that

$$egin{aligned} X_t &= K_t(X_{t-1}, U_t, heta), \quad t \geq 1 \ Y_t &= H_t(X_t, V_t, heta), \quad t \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

where K_0 , K_t , H_t , are determistic functions, $\{U_t\}$, $\{V_t\}$ are sequences of i.i.d. random variables (*noises*, or *shocks*), and $\theta \in \Theta$ is an unknown parameter.

A first definition (with functions)

A time series model that consists of two discrete-time processes $\{X_t\}:=(X_t)_{t\geq 0}, \{Y_t\}:=(Y_t)_{t\geq 0}$, taking values respectively in spaces \mathcal{X} and \mathcal{Y} , such that

$$egin{aligned} X_t &= K_t(X_{t-1}, U_t, heta), \quad t \geq 1 \ Y_t &= H_t(X_t, V_t, heta), \quad t \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

where K_0 , K_t , H_t , are determistic functions, $\{U_t\}$, $\{V_t\}$ are sequences of i.i.d. random variables (*noises*, or *shocks*), and $\theta \in \Theta$ is an unknown parameter.

This is a popular way to define SSMs in Engineering. Rigorous, but not sufficiently general.

A second definition (with densities)

$$p_{ heta}(x_0) = p_0^{ heta}(x_0)$$
 $p_{ heta}(x_t | x_{0:t-1}) = p_t^{ heta}(x_t | x_{t-1}) \quad t \ge 1$
 $p_{ heta}(y_t | x_{0:t}, y_{0:t-1}) = f_t^{ heta}(y_t | x_t)$

A second definition (with densities)

$$egin{aligned} & p_{ heta}(x_0) = p_0^{ heta}(x_0) \ & p_{ heta}(x_t | x_{0:t-1}) = p_t^{ heta}(x_t | x_{t-1}) & t \geq 1 \ & p_{ heta}(y_t | x_{0:t}, y_{0:t-1}) = f_t^{ heta}(y_t | x_t) \end{aligned}$$

Not so rigorous (or not general enough): some models are such that $X_t|X_{t-1}$ does not admit a probability density (with respect to a fixed dominating measure).

Section 2

Examples of state-space models

Signal processing: tracking, positioning, navigation

 X_t is position of a moving object, e.g.

$$X_t = X_{t-1} + U_t, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}_2(0, \sigma^2 I_2),$$

and Y_t is a measurement obtained by e.g. a radar,

$$Y_t = \operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{X_t(2)}{X_t(1)}\right) + V_t, \quad V_t \sim \mathcal{N}_1(0, \sigma_Y^2).$$

and $\theta = (\sigma^2, \sigma_Y^2)$.

Signal processing: tracking, positioning, navigation

 X_t is position of a moving object, e.g.

$$X_t = X_{t-1} + U_t, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}_2(0, \sigma^2 I_2),$$

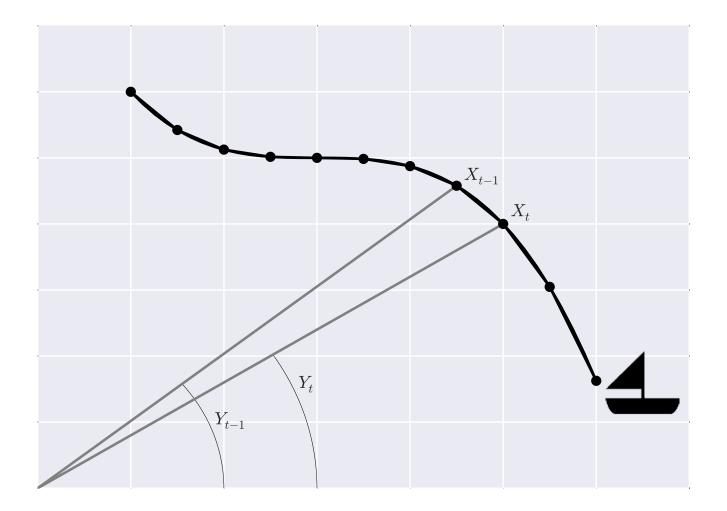
and Y_t is a measurement obtained by e.g. a radar,

$$Y_t = \operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{X_t(2)}{X_t(1)}\right) + V_t, \quad V_t \sim \mathcal{N}_1(0, \sigma_Y^2).$$

and $\theta = (\sigma^2, \sigma_Y^2)$.

(This is called the **bearings-only tracking** model.)

Corresponding plot



In GPS applications, the velocity v_t of the vehicle is observed, so motion model is (some variation of):

$$X_t = X_{t-1} + v_t + U_t, \qquad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}_2(0, \sigma^2 I_2).$$

Also Y_t usually consists of more than one measurement.

More advanced motion model

A random walk is too erratic for modelling the position of the target; assume instead its velocitity follows a random walk. Then define:

$$X_t = \begin{pmatrix} I_2 & I_2 \\ 0_{2\times 2} & I_2 \end{pmatrix} X_{t-1} + \begin{pmatrix} 0_2 \\ U_t \end{pmatrix}, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}_2(0, \sigma^2 I_2),$$

with obvious meanings for vector 0_2 and matrices $0_{2\times 2}$, I_2 .

More advanced motion model

A random walk is too erratic for modelling the position of the target; assume instead its velocitity follows a random walk. Then define:

$$X_t = \begin{pmatrix} I_2 & I_2 \\ 0_{2\times 2} & I_2 \end{pmatrix} X_{t-1} + \begin{pmatrix} 0_2 \\ U_t \end{pmatrix}, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}_2(0, \sigma^2 I_2),$$

with obvious meanings for vector 0_2 and matrices $0_{2\times 2}$, I_2 .

Note: $X_t(1)$ and $X_t(2)$ (position) are deterministic functions of X_{t-1} : no probability density for $X_t | X_{t-1}$.

multi-target tracking

Same ideas except $\{X_t\}$ now represent the position (and velocity if needed) of a set of targets (of random size); i.e. $\{X_t\}$ is a point process.

Time series of counts (neuro-decoding, astrostatistics, genetics)

Neuro-decoding: Y_t is a vector of d_y counts (spikes from neuron k),

 $Y_t(k)|X_t \sim \mathcal{P}(\lambda_k(X_t)), \quad \log \lambda_k(X_t) = \alpha_k + \beta_k X_t,$

and X_t is position+velocity of the subject's hand (in 3D).

- astro-statistics: Y_t is number of photon emissions; intensity varies over time (according to an auto-regressive process)
- Y_t is the number of 'reads', which is a noisy measurement of the transcription level X_t at position t in the genome;

Time series of counts (neuro-decoding, astrostatistics, genetics)

Neuro-decoding: Y_t is a vector of d_y counts (spikes from neuron k),

 $Y_t(k)|X_t \sim \mathcal{P}(\lambda_k(X_t)), \quad \log \lambda_k(X_t) = \alpha_k + \beta_k X_t,$

and X_t is position+velocity of the subject's hand (in 3D).

- astro-statistics: Y_t is number of photon emissions; intensity varies over time (according to an auto-regressive process)
- Y_t is the number of 'reads', which is a noisy measurement of the transcription level X_t at position t in the genome;

Note: 'functional' definition of state-space models is less convenient in this case.

Stochastic volatility (basic model)

 Y_t is log-return of asset price, $Y_t = \log(p_t/p_{t-1})$,

$$Y_t | X_t = x_t \sim \mathcal{N}\left(0, \exp(x_t)\right)$$

where $\{X_t\}$ is an auto-regressive process:

$$X_t - \mu = \phi(X_{t-1} - \mu) + U_t, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$$

and $\theta = (\mu, \phi, \sigma^2)$.

Stochastic volatility (basic model)

 Y_t is log-return of asset price, $Y_t = \log(p_t/p_{t-1})$,

$$Y_t | X_t = x_t \sim \mathcal{N}\left(0, \exp(x_t)\right)$$

where $\{X_t\}$ is an auto-regressive process:

$$X_t - \mu = \phi(X_{t-1} - \mu) + U_t, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$$

and $\theta = (\mu, \phi, \sigma^2)$. Take $|\phi| < 1$ and $X_0 \sim N(\mu, \sigma^2/(1 - \rho^2))$ to impose stationarity.

Stochastic volatility (variations)

- Student dist' for noises
- skewness: $Y_t = \alpha X_t + \exp(X_t/2)V_t$
- leverage effect: correlation between U_t and V_t
- multivariate extensions

Panel data (Heiss, 2008)

For each individual *i*, we observe the SRHS (self-rated health status), $Y_{it} = k$ iff $\alpha_{k-1} < Y_{it}^* \leq \alpha_k$, where Y_{it}^* is the actual health:

$$Y_{it}^{\star} = Z_{it}\beta + X_{it} + V_{it}, \quad V_{it} \sim \mathcal{N}(0,1)$$

and individual effect X_{it} is an AR(1):

$$X_{it} = \rho X_{i(t-1)} + \sigma \sqrt{1-\rho^2} U_{it}, \quad U_{it} \sim \mathcal{N}(0,1).$$

Panel data (Heiss, 2008)

For each individual *i*, we observe the SRHS (self-rated health status), $Y_{it} = k$ iff $\alpha_{k-1} < Y_{it}^* \leq \alpha_k$, where Y_{it}^* is the actual health:

$$Y_{it}^{\star} = Z_{it}\beta + X_{it} + V_{it}, \quad V_{it} \sim \mathcal{N}(0,1)$$

and individual effect X_{it} is an AR(1):

$$X_{it} = \rho X_{i(t-1)} + \sigma \sqrt{1-\rho^2} U_{it}, \quad U_{it} \sim \mathcal{N}(0,1).$$

Note: large number of univariate state-space models.

Nonlinear dynamic systems in Ecology, Epidemiology, and other fields

 $Y_t = X_t + V_t$, where $\{X_t\}$ is some complex nonlinear dynamic system. In Ecology for instance,

$$X_t = X_{t-1} + \theta_1 - \theta_2 \exp(\theta_3 X_{t-1}) + U_t$$

where X_t is log of population size. For some values of θ , process is nearly chaotic.

Nonlinear dynamic systems: Lokta-Volterra

Predator-prey model, where $\mathcal{X} = (\mathbb{Z}^+)^2$, $X_t(1)$ is the number of preys, $X_t(2)$ is the number of predators, and, working in continuous-time:

$$egin{aligned} X_t(1) & \stackrel{ heta_1}{ o} 2X_t(1) \ X_t(1) + X_t(2) & \stackrel{ heta_2}{ o} 2X_t(2), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}^+ \ X_t(2) & \stackrel{ heta_3}{ o} 0 \end{aligned}$$

(but Y_t still observed in discrete time.)

Nonlinear dynamic systems: Lokta-Volterra

Predator-prey model, where $\mathcal{X} = (\mathbb{Z}^+)^2$, $X_t(1)$ is the number of preys, $X_t(2)$ is the number of predators, and, working in continuous-time:

$$egin{aligned} X_t(1) & \stackrel{ heta_1}{ o} 2X_t(1) \ X_t(1) + X_t(2) & \stackrel{ heta_2}{ o} 2X_t(2), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}^+ \ X_t(2) & \stackrel{ heta_3}{ o} 0 \end{aligned}$$

(but Y_t still observed in discrete time.)

Intractable dynamics: We can simulate from $X_t | X_{t-1}$, but we can't compute $p_t(x_t | x_{t-1})$; see also compartmental models in Epidemiology.

State-space models with an intractable or degenerate observation process

We have seen models such that $X_t | X_{t-1}$ is intractable; $Y_t | X_t$ may be intractable as well. Let

$$X'_t = (X_t, Y_t), \quad Y'_t = Y_t + V_t, \quad V_t \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$$

and use $\{(X'_t, Y'_t)\}$ as an approximation of $\{(X_t, Y_t)\}$.

State-space models with an intractable or degenerate observation process

We have seen models such that $X_t | X_{t-1}$ is intractable; $Y_t | X_t$ may be intractable as well. Let

$$X'_t = (X_t, Y_t), \quad Y'_t = Y_t + V_t, \quad V_t \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$$

and use $\{(X'_t, Y'_t)\}$ as an approximation of $\{(X_t, Y_t)\}$.

 \Rightarrow Connection with ABC (likelihood-free inference).

Finite state-space models (aka hidden Markov models)

 $\mathcal{X} = \{1, \ldots, K\}$, uses in e.g.

- speech processing; X_t is a word, Y_t is an acoustic measurement (possibly the earliest application of HMMs). Note K is quite large.
- time-series modelling to deal with heterogenity (e.g. in medecine, X_t is state of patient)
- rediscovered in Economics as Markov-switching models; there X_t is the state of the Economy (recession, growth), and Y_t is some economic indicator (e.g. GDP) which follows an ARMA process (with parameters that depend on X_t)
- also related: change-point models

Finite state-space models (aka hidden Markov models)

 $\mathcal{X} = \{1, \dots, K\}$, uses in e.g.

- speech processing; X_t is a word, Y_t is an acoustic measurement (possibly the earliest application of HMMs). Note K is quite large.
- time-series modelling to deal with heterogenity (e.g. in medecine, X_t is state of patient)
- rediscovered in Economics as Markov-switching models; there X_t is the state of the Economy (recession, growth), and Y_t is some economic indicator (e.g. GDP) which follows an ARMA process (with parameters that depend on X_t)
- also related: change-point models

Note: Not of direct interest to us, as sequential analysis may be performed *exactly*.

Section 3

Sequential analysis of state-space models

Definition

The phrase *state-space models* refers not only to its definition (in terms of $\{X_t\}$ and $\{Y_t\}$) but also to a particular **inferential scenario**: $\{Y_t\}$ is observed (data denoted y_0, \ldots), $\{X_t\}$ is not, and one wishes to recover the X_t 's given the Y_t 's, often sequentially (over time).

Filtering, prediction, smoothing

Conditional distributions of interest (at every time t)

- Filtering: $X_t | Y_{0:t}$
- Prediction: $X_t | Y_{0:t-1}$
- data prediction: $Y_t | Y_{0:t-1}$
- fixed-lag smoothing: $X_{t-h:t}|Y_{0:t}$ for $h \ge 1$
- complete smoothing: $X_{0:t}|Y_{0:t}$
- likelihood factor: density of $Y_t | Y_{0:t-1}$ (so as to compute the full likelihood)

Parameter estimation

All these tasks are usually performed for a fixed θ (assuming the model depends on some parameter θ). To deal additionally with parameter uncertainty, we could adopt a Bayesian approach, and consider e.g. the law of (θ, X_t) given $Y_{0:t}$ (for filtering). But this is often more involved.

Formal notations

- $\{X_t\}$ is a Markov process with initial law $P_0(dx_0)$, and Markov kernel $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$.
- {Y_t} has conditional distribution F_t(x_t, dy_t), which admits probability density f_t(y_t|x_t) (with respect to common dominating measure ν(dy_t)).
- when needed, dependence on θ will be made explicit as follows: $P_t^{\theta}(x_{t-1}, dx_t), f_t^{\theta}(y_t|x_t),$ etc.

Applications of SMC beyond state-space models

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Applications of SMC beyond state-space models

For a Bayesian model, with parameter θ , data Y_0, \ldots, Y_t, \ldots (no latent variables), we would like to approximate recursively the posterior $p_t(\theta|y_{0:t})$. Could we treat this as a **filtering** problem, where

$$X_t = \Theta$$

is a constant process?

We wish to simulate from (or compute the normalising constant of):

 $\pi(\mathrm{d}\theta) \propto \mu(\mathrm{d}\theta) \exp\{-V(\theta)\}$

To do so, we introduce a **tempering** sequence:

$$\mathbb{P}_t(\mathrm{d}\theta) \propto \mu(\mathrm{d}\theta) \exp\{-\lambda_t V(\theta)\}$$

where $0=\lambda_0<\ldots<\lambda_{\mathcal{T}}=1,$ and use SMC to target recursively $\mathbb{P}_0,\ \mathbb{P}_1,\ \ldots$

Plot of tempering sequence

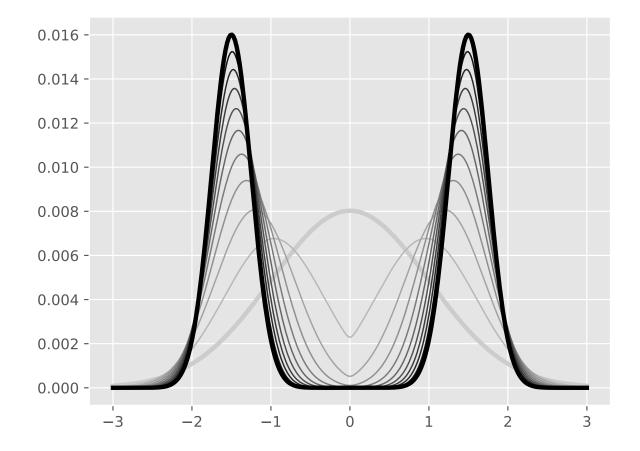


Figure 1: From a Gaussian to a mixture of two Gaussians

In all these applications, how are we going to set the Markov kernels M_t to simulate the particles?

In all these applications, how are we going to set the Markov kernels M_t to simulate the particles?

Hint: use MCMC.

Markov processes

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Markov processes

◆□ > <□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

590

Summary

- Introduce Markov processes via kernels
- Recursions of marginal distributions
- Conditional distributions
 - conditional independence
 - partially observed Markov processes & state-space models
- Graphical models

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆ □▶ ◆ □▶ ─

1

Definition

A probability kernel from (X, B(X)) to (Y, B(Y)), P(x, dy'), is a function from (X, B(Y)) to [0, 1] such that
(a) for every x, P(x, ·) is a probability measure on (Y, B(Y)),
(b) for every A ∈ B(Y), P(x, A) is a measurable function in X.

Then, if

$$\mathbb{P}_1(\mathrm{d} x_{0:1}) = \mathbb{P}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) P_1(x_0, \mathrm{d} x_1)$$

by construction, $\mathbb{P}_1(\mathrm{d} x_0) = \mathbb{P}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0)$ and

$$\mathbb{P}_1(X_1 \in \mathrm{d} x_1 | X_0 = x_0) = P_1(x_0, \mathrm{d} x_1).$$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ● ● ●

Backward kernel - Bayes

$\mathbb{P}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) P_1(x_0, \mathrm{d} x_1) = \mathbb{P}_1(\mathrm{d} x_1) \overleftarrow{P}_0(x_1, \mathrm{d} x_0),$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Markov processes

<ロ> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回>

 $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{O}$

Definition

A sequence of random variables $X_{0:T}$ with joint distribution given by

$$\mathbb{P}_{\mathcal{T}}(X_{0:\mathcal{T}} \in \mathrm{d} x_{0:\mathcal{T}}) = \mathbb{P}_{0}(\mathrm{d} x_{0}) \prod_{s=1}^{\mathcal{T}} P_{s}(x_{s-1}, \mathrm{d} x_{s}),$$

is called a (discrete-time) Markov process with state-space \mathcal{X} , initial distribution \mathbb{P}_0 and transition kernel at time t, P_t . Likewise, a probability measure decomposed into a product of an initial distribution and transition kernels as in (2) will be called a Markov measure.

<ロ > < 同 > < 三 > < 三 > <

3

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Conditional independence

$$\mathbb{P}_{\mathcal{T}}(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | X_{0:t-1} = x_{0:t-1}) = P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t).$$

$$\mathbb{P}_{\mathcal{T}}(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | X_{0:s} = x_{0:s}) = P_{s+1:t}(x_s, \mathrm{d} x_t), \quad \forall t \leq \mathcal{T}, s < t,$$

where

$$P_{s+1:t}(x_s, A) = \int_{\mathcal{X}^{t-s}} P_{s+1}(x_s, \mathrm{d} x_{s+1}) P_{s+2}(x_{s+1}, \mathrm{d} x_{s+2}) \cdots P_t(x_{t-1}, A).$$

◆□ > <□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

590

A marginalisation property

Proposition

Consider a sequence of probability measures, index by t, defined as:

$$\mathbb{P}_t(X_{0:t} \in \mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) = \mathbb{P}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) \prod_{s=1}^t P_s(x_{s-1}, \mathrm{d} x_s),$$

where P_s are probability kernels. Then, for any $t \leq T$,

 $\mathbb{P}_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) = \mathbb{P}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}).$

<ロト < 団 > < 巨 > < 巨 > 三 三

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Some recursions

$$\mathbb{P}_t(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_t}[\mathbb{P}_t(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | X_{0:s})] = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_t}[P_{s+1:t}(X_s, \mathrm{d} x_t)].$$

With the marginalisation it yields the Chapman-Kolmogorov equation

$$\mathbb{P}_t(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_s}[P_{s+1:t}(X_s, \mathrm{d} x_t)], \quad \forall s \leq t-1.$$

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲콜▶ ▲콜▶ — 콜:

 $\mathcal{O} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{O}$

Backward process

$$\mathbb{P}_{T}(X_{0:T} \in \mathrm{d} x_{0:T}) = \mathbb{P}_{T}(\mathrm{d} x_{T}) \prod_{s=1}^{T} \overleftarrow{P}_{T-s}(x_{T-s+1}, \mathrm{d} x_{T-s}),$$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Markov processes

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● のへで

POMP & SSM

$$\mathbb{P}_{T}(X_{0:T} \in \mathrm{d}x_{0:T}, Y_{0:T} \in \mathrm{d}y_{0:T}) = \mathbb{P}_{T}(\mathrm{d}x_{0:T}) \prod_{t=0}^{T} f_{t}(y_{t}|x_{t}) \prod_{t=0}^{T} \nu(\mathrm{d}y_{t})$$
$$= \mathbb{P}_{0}(\mathrm{d}x_{0}) \prod_{t=1}^{T} P_{t}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_{t}) \prod_{t=0}^{T} f_{t}(y_{t}|x_{t}) \prod_{t=0}^{T} \nu(\mathrm{d}y_{t})$$

When relevant, $f_t^{\theta}(y_t|x_t)$ and $P_t^{\theta}(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ Components of a SSM

Likelihood

$$p_t(y_{0:t}) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_t} \left[\prod_{s=0}^t f_s(y_s | x_s) \right]$$

is the density (likelihood/partition function) of the law of $Y_{0:T}$; Likelihood factors

$$p_t(y_{0:t}) = p_0(y_0) \prod_{s=1}^t p_s(y_s|y_{0:s-1}).$$

and

$$p_{t+k}(y_{t:t+k}|y_{0:t-1}) = p_{t+k}(y_{0:t+k})/p_{t-1}(y_{0:t-1}), \quad k \ge 0, t \ge 1.$$

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲ 돈▶ ▲ 돈▶ _ 돈.

 $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{O}$

Law of states given observations

$$\mathbb{P}_t(X_{0:t} \in \mathrm{d} x_{0:t} | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}) = \frac{1}{p_t(y_{0:t})} \left\{ \prod_{s=0}^t f_s(y_s | x_s) \right\} \mathbb{P}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}).$$

(To see this, multiply both sides by $p_t(y_{0:t}) \prod_{s=0}^t \nu(dy_s)$) Another SSM function that will be is likelihood of future observations given the current value of the state.

$$p_T(y_{t+1:T}|x_t) = \frac{\mathbb{P}_T(Y_{t+1:T} \in dy_{t+1:T}|X_{0:t} = x_{0:t}, Y_t = y_t)}{\nu^{T-t}(dy_{t+1:T})}, t < T,$$

where by conditional independence it does not depend on $x_{0:t-1}, y_t$

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

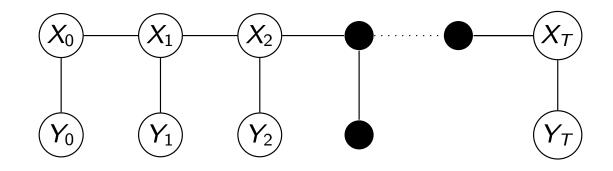
Restating SSM aims

- state prediction: deriving
 - $\mathbb{P}_t(X_{t+1:t+h} \in dx_{t+1:t+h} | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$, for $h \ge 1$;
- **filtering**: deriving $\mathbb{P}_t(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$;
- fixed-lag smoothing: deriving $\mathbb{P}_t(X_{t-l:t} \in dx_{t-l:t} | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$ for some $l \ge 1$;
- (complete) smoothing: deriving $\mathbb{P}_t(X_{0:t} \in dx_{0:t} | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$;
- likelihood computation: deriving $p_t(y_{0:t})$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ● ● ●

Graphical models

Variables as nodes; when any two are linked by a kernel draw an edge:



Path; conditional independence; Markov property of $(X_{0;T}, Y_{0:T})$, $X_{0:T}, X_{0:T}$ conditionally on $Y_{0:T}$ but not of $Y_{0:T}$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆ □▶ ◆ □▶ ─

3

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Further reading

- Conditional independence, Chapter 5 of Foundations of modern Probability (Kallenberg, Springer)
- Intro to graphical models: Chapter 8 of Pattern recognition and machine learning (Bishop, Springer)

<ロト < 団 > < 臣 > < 臣 > 三 臣)

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Feynman-Kac models & HMMs

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Feynman-Kac models & HMMs

 $\mathcal{O} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{O}$

Feynman-Kac models HMMs Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures



- Change of measure
- Feynman-Kac formalism
- Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model
- Forward recursion
- FK as Markov measures

2 HMMs

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

 Feynman-Kac models
HMMs
 Change of measure
Feynman-Kac formalism
Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model
Forward recursion
FK as Markov measures

 Summary

- Tool: change of measure
- Define FK models via Markov and CoM
- FK formalism of given probabilistic models
- Explore properties of FK models: recursion, marginalisation, Markovianity
- Apply the machinery on specific SSMs: HMMs.

(日)

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Change of measure

Definition

Let $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{X}))$ be a measurable space, and \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{Q} two probability measures defined on this space. We then say that \mathbb{Q} is absolutely continuous with respect to \mathbb{M} , if for any $A \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{X})$ for which $\mathbb{M}(A) = 0$, $\mathbb{Q}(A) = 0$. In this case, we also say that \mathbb{M} dominates \mathbb{Q} .

In fact, \mathbb{Q} is a.c. wrt to \mathbb{M} iff \exists

$$w(x) = rac{\mathbb{Q}(\mathrm{d}x)}{\mathbb{M}(\mathrm{d}x)}$$

(Radon-Nikodym)

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

The other way around

Alternatively, if you give me:

- A probability measure \mathbb{M} ;
- a function $G \ge 0$ such that

$$L:=\mathbb{M}(G)\in(0,\infty)$$

Then I can define:

$$\mathbb{Q}(\mathrm{d} x) = \frac{1}{L} \mathbb{M}(\mathrm{d} x) G(x)$$

and

$$\mathbb{Q}(\varphi) = \frac{1}{L}\mathbb{M}(G\varphi) = \frac{\mathbb{M}(G\varphi)}{\mathbb{M}(G)}.$$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

The components of a Feynman-Kac model

• Markov measure:

$$\mathbb{M}_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:\mathcal{T}}) = \mathbb{M}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) \prod_{t=1}^{\mathcal{T}} M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t).$$

- Potential functions, $G_0: \mathcal{X} \to \mathbb{R}^+$, and $G_t: \mathcal{X}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^+$, for $1 \leq t \leq T$
- Change of measure: for $t \leq T$

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:T}) = \frac{1}{L_t} G_0(x_0) \left\{ \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(x_{s-1}, x_s) \right\} \mathbb{M}_T(\mathrm{d} x_{0:T})$$

Components: $T, G_0, \mathbb{M}_0, G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t), M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

SQ (A

Partition function/evidence/marginal likelihood

$$\begin{split} L_t &= \int_{\mathcal{X}^{t+1}} G_0(x_0) \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(x_{s-1}, x_s) \mathbb{M}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) \\ &= \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}_t} \left[G_0(X_0) \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(X_{s-1}, X_s) \right] \,. \end{split}$$

and assume that G_t 's such that $0 < L_t < \infty$ for all tNormalising factors: $\ell_t = L_t/L_{t-1}$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

The "bootstrap" Feynman-Kac formalism of a state-space model

For a state-space model with transition kernels $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ observation densities $f_t(y_t|x_t)$, define its "bootstrap" Feynman-Kac formalism as the Feynman-Kac model such that

$$M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) = P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t), \quad G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) = f_t(y_t|x_t),$$

and $\mathbb{M}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) = \mathbb{P}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0)$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{Q}_{t-1}(\mathrm{d}x_{0:t}) &= \mathbb{P}_t(X_{0:t} \in \mathrm{d}x_{0:t} | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}) \\ \mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d}x_{0:t}) &= \mathbb{P}_t(X_{0:t} \in \mathrm{d}x_{0:t} | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}) \\ L_t &= p_t(y_{0:t}) \end{aligned}$$

Feynman-Kac models HMMs	Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

 \sim

Is this the only one? And what is this formalism useful for?

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ 三三 のへで

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

(日)

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

The "guided" Feynman-Kac formalism of a state-space model

Consider a state-space model with signal transition kernels $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ and observation densities $f_t(y_t|x_t)$. We define its "guided" Feynman-Kac formalism to be a Feynman-Kac model with the following components

$$G_0(x_0)\mathbb{M}_0(dx_0) = f_0(y_0|x_0)\mathbb{P}_0(dx_0),$$

$$G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t)M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t) = f_t(y_t|x_t)P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Feynman-Kac models & HMMs

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

The "auxiliary" Feynman-Kac formalism of a state-space model

Consider a state-space model with signal transition kernels $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ and observation densities $f_t(y_t|x_t)$. Additionally, let $\eta_t(x_t)$ be user-chosen, "auxiliary" functions, such that $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_t}[\eta_t(X_t)|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}] < \infty$ for all t. We define its "auxiliary" Feynman-Kac formalism to be a Feynman-Kac model with the following components

$$G_0(x_0)\mathbb{M}_0(dx_0) = f_0(y_0|x_0)\mathbb{P}_0(dx_0)\eta_0(x_0)$$
$$G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t)M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t) = f_t(y_t|x_t)P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)\frac{\eta_t(x_t)}{\eta_{t-1}(x_{t-1})}$$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ■

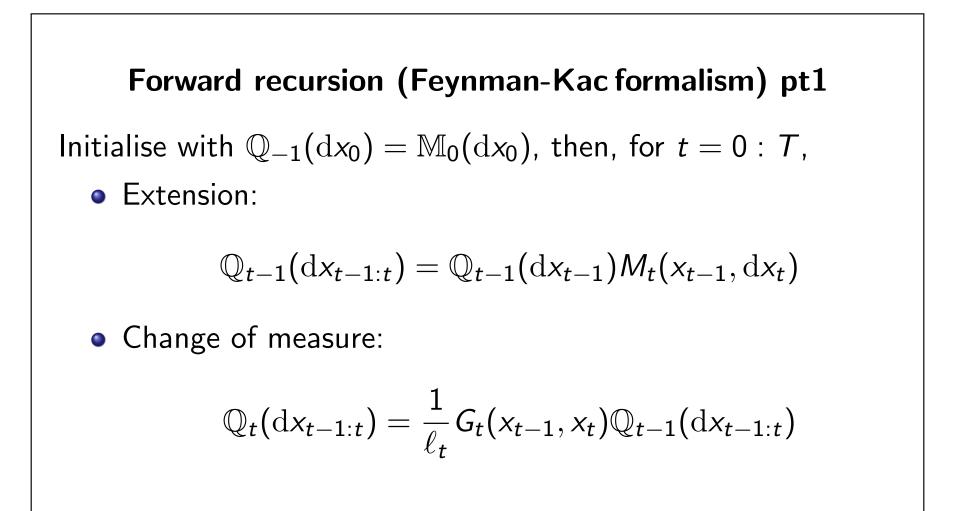
 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Use of formalism

- Decouple a statistical model (the state-space model) from its mathematical representation → unified treatment of theory (recursions) and numerics (particle filters)
- Feynman-Kac models share the same fundamental structure: the specific change of measure from a Markov measure → common set of recursions regardless of the details of components
- Feynman-Kac representation and modularity
- Feynman-Kac outside state-space models

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

SQ (A



Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ →

E.

SQ (?

Forward recursion (Feynman-Kac formalism) pt2

with

$$\ell_0 = L_0 = \int_{\mathcal{X}} G_0(x_0) M_0(\mathrm{d} x_0)$$

and, for $t \geq 1$,

$$\ell_t = \frac{L_t}{L_{t-1}} = \int_{\mathcal{X}^2} G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) \mathbb{Q}_{t-1}(\mathrm{d} x_{t-1:t}) \ .$$

• Marginalisation:

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_t) = \int_{x_{t-1}\in\mathcal{X}} \mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{t-1:t})$$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model **Forward recursion** FK as Markov measures

Implications for the "b"-fm: recursion for filter, prediction, likelihood

$$\mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1})$$

= $\int_{\mathcal{X}} P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) \mathbb{P}_t(X_{t-1} \in \mathrm{d} x_{t-1} | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}),$

$$\mathbb{P}_t(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}) = \frac{1}{p_t(y_t | y_{0:t-1})} f_t(y_t | x_t)$$
$$\mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}).$$

$$p_t(y_t|y_{0:t-1}) = \int_{\mathcal{X}^2} f_t(y_t|x_t) \mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_{t-1:t} \in \mathrm{d} x_{t-1:t} | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}).$$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

Feynman-Kac model as a Markov measure - cost-to-go functions

$$H_{T:T}(x_T) = 1,$$

$$H_{t:T}(x_t) = \int_{\mathcal{X}^{T-t}} \prod_{s=t+1}^T G_s(x_{s-1}, x_s) M_s(x_{s-1}, dx_s), \quad t < T.$$

Hence

$$H_{t:T}(x_t) = \int_{\mathcal{X}} G_{t+1}(x_t, x_{t+1}) H_{t+1:T}(x_{t+1}) M_{t+1}(x_t, dx_{t+1})$$

but also

$$H_{t:T}(x_t) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}_T} \left[\prod_{s=t+1}^T G_s(X_{s-1}, X_s) \middle| X_t = x_t \right]$$

= $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}_{t+1}} \left[G_{t+1}(X_t, X_{t+1}) H_{t+1:T}(X_{t+1}) \middle| X_t = x_t \right]$
= $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}_{t+1}} \left[G_{t+1}(X_t, X_{t+1}) H_{t+1:T}(X_{t+1}) \middle| X_t = x_t \right]$
= $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}_{t+1}} \left[G_{t+1}(X_t, X_{t+1}) H_{t+1:T}(X_{t+1}) \middle| X_t = x_t \right]$

Feynman-Kac models HMMs Fey For

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

Proposition

 $\mathbb{Q}_{\mathcal{T}}$ is the law of a Markov process with state-space $\mathcal{X},$ initial distribution

$$\mathbb{Q}_{0|T}(\mathrm{d} x_0) = \frac{H_{0:T}(x_0)}{L_T} G_0(x_0) \mathbb{M}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0),$$

forward transition kernels $Q_{t|T}(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ given by:

$$Q_{t|T}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) = \frac{H_{t:T}(x_t)}{H_{t-1:T}(x_{t-1})} G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t),$$

and backward kernels given by:

$$\mathbb{Q}_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathrm{d} x_t) \overleftarrow{Q}_{t-1}(x_t, \mathrm{d} x_{t-1}) = \mathbb{Q}_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathrm{d} x_{t-1}) Q_{t|\mathcal{T}}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t).$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > .

3

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Implications for the "b"-fm: POMP

By immediate translation:

$$H_{t:T}(x_t) = \frac{\mathbb{P}_T(Y_{t+1:T} \in \mathrm{d}y_{t+1:T} | X_t = x_t)}{\nu^{T-t}(\mathrm{d}y_{t+1:T})}, t < T.$$

$$p_t(y_{t+1:T}|x_t) = \int_{\mathcal{X}} f(y_{t+1}|x_{t+1}) p(y_{t+2:T}|x_{t+1}) P_t(x_t, \mathrm{d}x_{t+1}).$$

Hence, the conditioned Markov process is also Markov with

$$\mathbb{P}_{0|T}(\mathrm{d}x_{0}) = \frac{p(y_{1:T}|x_{0})}{p(y_{0:T})} f_{0}(y_{0}|x_{0}) \mathbb{P}_{0}(\mathrm{d}x_{0}),$$
$$P_{t|T}(x_{t-1},\mathrm{d}x_{t}) = \frac{p(y_{t+1:T}|x_{t})}{p(y_{t:T}|x_{t-1})} f_{t}(y_{t}|x_{t}) P_{t}(x_{t-1},\mathrm{d}x_{t}).$$

Stability properties

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Forward-backward recursions in Feynman-Kac models

Recall that $M_T(dx_{0:t}) = M_t(dx_{0:t})$. For the Feynman-Kac model we have:

Proposition

For any t < T,

$$\mathbb{Q}_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) = \frac{L_t}{L_T} H_{t:T}(x_t) \mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}).$$

Ideas for proof?

Proof: use the Markov property of the Q process

Feynman-Kac models HMMs Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲ 필▶ ▲ 필▶ - " 클.

 $\mathcal{O} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{O}$

Corollary

$$\mathbb{Q}_T(\mathrm{d} x_t) = \frac{L_t}{L_T} H_{t:T}(x_t) \mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_t) \,.$$

& from **Proposition 2** and the result above we get:

Corollary

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_t) \overleftarrow{Q}_{t-1}(x_t, \mathrm{d} x_{t-1}) = \frac{1}{\ell_t} \mathbb{Q}_{t-1}(\mathrm{d} x_{t-1}) G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

<ロ> < 団> < 団> < 豆> < 豆> < 豆>

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Implications for the "b"-fm: forward filtering/backward smoothing

$$\mathbb{P}(X_t \in dx_t | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) = \frac{1}{p(y_{t+1:T} | y_{0:t})} p(y_{t+1:T} | x_t)$$
$$\mathbb{P}(X_t \in dx_t | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$$

$$\begin{split} &\overleftarrow{P}_{t|t}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d}x_t) = \frac{1}{p(y_t|y_{0:t-1})} f_t(y_t|x_t) \\ & \frac{P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_t)}{\mathbb{P}_t(X_t \in \mathrm{d}x_t|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})} \mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_{t-1} \in \mathrm{d}x_{t-1}|Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}) \,. \end{split}$$

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

<ロト < 団 > < 巨 > < 巨 > 三 三

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Forward-backward simulation

How generate draws from $\mathbb{Q}_T(dx_{0:T})$?

Then, we should know how to generate from

$$\mathbb{P}_T(X_{0:T} \in \mathrm{d} x_{0:T} | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T})$$

ideas?

Change of measure Feynman-Kac formalism Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model Forward recursion FK as Markov measures

<ロ> < 団> < 団> < 豆> < 豆> < 豆>

 $\mathcal{O} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{O}$

Further reading

• Feynman-Kac formulae (Del Moral, Springer)

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Feynman-Kac models & HMMs

Outline



- Change of measure
- Feynman-Kac formalism
- Feynman-Kac formalisms of a state space model
- Forward recursion
- FK as Markov measures



<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <



- $\mathcal{X} = \{1, \ldots, K\}$
- Integrals \rightarrow sums; measures \rightarrow vectors; kernels \rightarrow matrices
- Following based on "bootstrap" formalism

Recursions for hidden Markov models

The following are understood for all $k \in 1 : \mathcal{D}$

• Prediction:

$$\mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_t = k | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}) = \sum_{l=1}^{\mathcal{D}} \mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_{t-1} = l | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}) p_t(k|l)$$

• Filter:

$$\mathbb{P}_t(X_t = k | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}) = \frac{1}{p(y_t | y_{0:t-1})} \mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_t = k | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}) f_t(y_t | k)$$

• Likelihood factors:

$$p_t(y_t|y_{0:t-1}) = \sum_k \mathbb{P}_{t-1}(X_t = k|Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1})f_t(y_t|k)$$

• Likelihood of future observations given current state:

$$p_T(y_{t+1:T}|k) = \sum_l f(y_{t+1}|l)p(y_{t+2:T}|l)p_t(l|k)$$

Complexity

- Predictive probabilities: $\mathcal{O}(K^2)$ (unless sparse transition matrix, e.g. change point models)
- Given those, filter & likelihood factors obtained at $\mathcal{O}(K)$
- Overall cost: $\mathcal{O}(TK^2)$ as opposed to $\mathcal{O}(K^T)$
- Still, *K* might be large...

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ▲ = ▶ ▲ = ● の Q @

IS Resampling	Intro to MC	
Resampling		
	Resampling	

Importance sampling and resampling

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Importance sampling and resampling

 \mathcal{A}



- Introduce MC integration & basic perspective on IS (incl. some optimality considerations)
- Shift attention to probability measure approximations
- Study MSE of IS: asymptotics and concentration inequalities
- Measures of performance: ESS
- Random weight importance sampling: a forest of algorithms!
- CoD and introduction to the tool of resampling

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Intro to MC IS Resampling	
Outline	



2 IS

- A first take
- MSE & ESS
- Random Weight IS

3 Resampling



$$\mathbb{E}_q[\varphi(X)] = \int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) q(x) \, \mathrm{d}x \quad \approx \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \varphi(X^n), \qquad X^n \sim q,$$

Assessing the error: if $\mathbb{E}_q[\varphi(X)^2] < +\infty$

$$\mathrm{MSE}\left[\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(X^n)\right] = \mathbb{E}\left[\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(X^n) - \mathbb{E}_q[\varphi(X)]\right\}^2\right] = \frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Var}_q[\varphi(X)]$$

- error vanishes at rate $O_P(N^{-1/2})$, which is rather slow: to divide the error by 10, you need 100 more samples;
- O_P means that the bound on the approximation error is stochastic: error is below a threshold with some probability

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Intro to MC IS Resampling

$$LLN \quad \left\{ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \varphi(X^n) - \mathbb{E}_q[\varphi(X)] \right\} o 0 \quad \text{a.s.}$$

$$CLT \quad N^{1/2}\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(X^n) - \mathbb{E}_q[\varphi(X)]\right\} \Rightarrow \mathcal{N}\left(0, \operatorname{Var}_q[\varphi(X)]\right),$$

$$CI \quad \left[\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(X^n) \pm \frac{z_{1-\alpha/2}}{N^{1/2}} \operatorname{Var}_q[\varphi(X)]\right]$$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Importance sampling and resampling

< ロ > < 団 > < 巨 > < 巨 > < 巨 > < 巨 < つ < (?)

Intro to MC IS Resampling Resampling A first take MSE & ESS Random Weight IS



2 IS

- A first take
- MSE & ESS
- Random Weight IS

3 Resampling

◆□ > <□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Intro to MC A first take IS MSE & ESS Resampling Random Weight IS

A first take on IS

$$\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) q(x) \mathrm{d}x = \int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) \frac{q(x)}{m(x)} m(x) \mathrm{d}x$$

Sufficient condition for validity

• Normalised IS estimator

$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}w(X^{n})\varphi(X^{n}) \quad X^{n} \sim m \quad w(x) = q(x)/m(x)$$

<ロ> < 団> < 団> < 豆> < 豆> < 豆>

 $\mathcal{O} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{O}$

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS

Alternatively, when $q = q_u/Z_q$, $m = m_u/Z_m$, and q_u , m_u are tractable, but the constants Z_q and/or Z_m are not:

$$\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) q(x) \, \mathrm{d}x = \frac{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) \frac{q(x)}{m(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \frac{q(x)}{m(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}$$
$$= \frac{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) \frac{q_u(x)}{m_u(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \frac{q_u(x)}{m_u(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}$$

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS

Alternatively, when $q = q_u/Z_q$, $m = m_u/Z_m$, and q_u , m_u are tractable, but the constants Z_q and/or Z_m are not:

$$\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) q(x) \, \mathrm{d}x = \frac{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) \frac{q(x)}{m(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \frac{q(x)}{m(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}$$
$$= \frac{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \varphi(x) \frac{q_u(x)}{m_u(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} \frac{q_u(x)}{m_u(x)} m(x) \, \mathrm{d}x}$$

Autonormalised IS estimator

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W^{n} \varphi(X^{n}), \qquad W^{n} = \frac{w(X^{n})}{\sum_{m=1}^{N} w(X^{m})},$$

where $w(x) := q_u(x)/m_u(x) \propto q(x)/m(x)$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ◆□▶

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS
Question	

Which one??

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Importance sampling and resampling

◆ □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Intro to MC A first take IS MSE & ESS Resampling Random Weight IS

Optimal proposal

Proposition

The MSE of the normalised IS estimator of $\mathbb{E}_q[\varphi(X)]$, is minimised with respect to m by taking $m = m^*$,

$$m^{\star}(x) = \frac{q(x) |\varphi(x)|}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} |\varphi(x')| q(x') \, \mathrm{d}x'}$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Var}_{m}\left[q(X)\varphi(X)/m(X)\right] &= & \mathbb{E}_{m}\left[q(X)^{2}\varphi(X)^{2}/m(X)^{2}\right] - \mathbb{E}_{q}[\varphi(X)]^{2} \\ &\geq & \left\{\mathbb{E}_{q}\left[|\varphi(X)|\right]\right\}^{2} - \mathbb{E}_{q}[\varphi(X)]^{2} \\ &= & \operatorname{Var}_{m^{\star}}\left[q(X)\varphi(X)/m^{\star}(X)\right]. \end{aligned}$$

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS

• If $\varphi \geq 0$ the variance of the optimal normalised estimator is 0.

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Importance sampling and resampling

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Intro to MC	A first take
IS Resampling	MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

- If $\varphi \geq 0$ the variance of the optimal normalised estimator is 0.
- More generally

$$w^{\star}(x)\varphi(x) = \frac{q(x)}{m^{\star}(x)}\varphi(x) = \operatorname{sign} \left\{\phi(x)\right\} \times \mathbb{E}_{q}\left[|\varphi(X)|\right]$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● の Q @

Intro to MC	A first take
IS Resampling	MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

- If $\varphi \geq 0$ the variance of the optimal normalised estimator is 0.
- More generally

$$w^{\star}(x)\varphi(x) = \frac{q(x)}{m^{\star}(x)}\varphi(x) = \operatorname{sign} \left\{\phi(x)\right\} \times \mathbb{E}_{q}\left[|\varphi(X)|\right]$$

• Optimal proposal for auto-normalised IS:

$$m^{\star}(x) = \frac{q(x)|\overline{\varphi}(x)|}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} q(x')|\overline{\varphi}(x')| \, \mathrm{d}x'}$$

Intro to MC IS Resampling

A first take MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

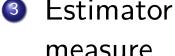
Formal perspective on IS

- \mathbb{Q} vs q
- **2** change of measure:

$$\mathbb{M}(\phi w) = \mathbb{Q}(\phi)\mathbb{M}(w).$$

that suggests

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W^n \varphi(X^n), \qquad W^n = \frac{w(X^n)}{\sum_{m=1}^{N} w(X^m)}.$$



$$\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\mathrm{d} x) := \sum_{n=1}^{N} W^{n} \delta_{X^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x), \qquad X^{n} \sim \mathbb{M}.$$

Dirac

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS

Then

$$\mathbb{Q}^N(\varphi) = \sum_{n=1}^N W^n \varphi(X^n).$$

and we can think of weak convergence of measures, i.e. we say that

 $\mathbb{Q}^{N} \Rightarrow \mathbb{Q}$

as $N \to +\infty$ provided that $\mathbb{Q}^N(\varphi) \to \mathbb{Q}(\varphi)$ for any $\varphi \in \mathcal{C}_b(\mathcal{X})$.

MSE of normalised IS

Context: target \mathbb{Q} , proposal \mathbb{M} , unnormalised weight w(x) and normalised weight $w(x)/\mathbb{M}(w)$.

$$\mathrm{MSE}\left[\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\frac{w(X^{n})}{\mathbb{M}(w)}\varphi(X^{n})\right] = \frac{1}{N}\times\frac{\mathbb{M}[w^{2}\varphi^{2}] - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi)^{2}}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}}$$

For auto-normalised, notice that

$$\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi) - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi) = \frac{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{w(X^{n})}{\mathbb{M}(w)} [\varphi(X^{n}) - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi)]}{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{w(X^{n})}{\mathbb{M}(w)}}$$

<ロ> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回>

Asymptotics

Ratio of RVs:

• nominator: normalised importance sampling estimator of $\mathbb{Q}(\overline{\varphi})$ with $\overline{\varphi} = \varphi - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi)$

• denominator: normalised importance sampling estimator of 1. Provided

$$\mathbb{M}(w^2\varphi^2) < \infty \,, \tag{1}$$

590

by CLT

$$\sqrt{N}\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\frac{w(X^{n})}{\mathbb{M}(w)}[\varphi(X^{n})-\mathbb{Q}(\varphi)]\right\} \Rightarrow \mathcal{N}\left(0,\frac{\mathbb{M}(w^{2}\overline{\varphi}^{2})}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}}\right)$$

and by SLLN

$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\frac{w(X^{n})}{\mathbb{M}(w)} \to 1 \quad \text{a.s.}$$

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS

Hence, by *Slutsky theorems*

$$\sqrt{N}\left\{\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi) - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi)\right\} \Rightarrow \mathcal{N}\left(0, \frac{\mathbb{M}(w^{2}\overline{\varphi}^{2})}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}}\right)$$

from which we get that for large N,

$$\mathrm{MSE}\left\{\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi)\right\}\approx\frac{1}{N}\frac{\mathbb{M}(w^{2}\overline{\varphi}^{2})}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}}$$

Slutsky: what is it about? Note similarity to the MSE of the normalised estimator

<ロ> < 団> < 団> < 豆> < 豆> < 豆>

Necessary condition for finite variance

Proposition

The condition $\mathbb{M}(w^2\overline{\varphi}^2) < +\infty$, with $\overline{\varphi} = \varphi - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi)$, holds for all bounded functions φ if and only if $\mathbb{M}(w^2) < \infty$.

Variance of the weight good criterion for the performance of IS:

 $\mathrm{MSE}\left\{\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi)\right\} < \infty \text{ for all bounded functions } \varphi \iff \mathbb{M}(w^{2}) < \infty.$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Intro to MC	A first take
IS Resampling	MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

Proof.

Sufficient condition: assume $\mathbb{M}(w^2) < \infty$, and take φ such that $|\varphi| < C$. Then $|\overline{\varphi}| \leq 2C$ and $\mathbb{M}(w^2\overline{\varphi}^2) \leq 4C^2\mathbb{M}(w^2) < +\infty$. Necessary condition: if \mathbb{Q} is a trivial probability measure such that $\mathbb{Q}(A)$ is either 0 or 1 for $A \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{X})$, then by absolute continuity so is \mathbb{M} and $\mathbb{M}(w^2) = 1$ and $\mathbb{M}(w^2\overline{\varphi}^2) < +\infty$. Away from this trivial case, we can choose some set $A \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{X})$ such that $0 < \mathbb{Q}(A) \leq 1/2$. Then, taking $\varphi = \mathbb{1}_A$, note that

$$\mathbb{M}(w^2\overline{\varphi}^2) = \mathbb{M}(w^2\mathbb{1}_A)(1-2\mathbb{Q}(A)) + \mathbb{Q}(A)^2\mathbb{M}(w^2).$$

Therefore, if $\mathbb{M}(w^2) = \infty$ then $\mathbb{M}(w^2\overline{\varphi}^2) = \infty$ for some bounded function φ .

Non-asymptotic results

Theorem

Agapiou et al. (2018) derive the following concentration inequality, with strong assumptions on the test but very weak on the weights:

 $\sup_{|\varphi| \leq 1} \mathrm{MSE}\{\mathbb{Q}^N(\varphi)\} \leq \frac{4}{N} \frac{\mathbb{M}(w^2)}{\mathbb{M}(w)^2} \,.$

Directly links with the metric introduced in Rebeschini and van Handel (2013). key quantity

Proof

$$\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi) - \mathbb{Q}(\varphi) = \frac{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} \varphi(X^{n}) w(X^{n})}{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} w(X^{n})} - \frac{\mathbb{M}(\varphi w)}{\mathbb{M}(w)}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} w(X^{n})} - \frac{1}{\mathbb{M}(w)}\right) \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} \varphi(X^{n}) w(X^{n})$$

$$- \frac{1}{\mathbb{M}(w)} \left(\mathbb{M}(\varphi w) - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} \varphi(X^{n}) w(X^{n})\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\mathbb{M}(w)} \left(\mathbb{M}(w) - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} w(X^{n})\right) \mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi)$$

$$- \frac{1}{\mathbb{M}(w)} \left(\mathbb{M}(\varphi w) - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} \varphi(X^{n}) w(X^{n})\right)$$

(日)

Intro to MC A f IS MS Resampling Rai

A first take MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

Proof ctd

- inequality $(a+b)^2 \leq 2(a^2+b^2)$
- for $|arphi| \leq 1$, $|\mathbb{Q}^{N}(arphi)| \leq 1$ a.s.

to get:

$$\begin{split} \mathrm{MSE}\{\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi)\} &\leq \frac{2}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}} \left\{ \mathrm{MSE}\left\{ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} w(X^{n}) \right\} \right. \\ &+ \mathrm{MSE}\left\{ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n} \varphi(X^{n}) w(X^{n}) \right\} \right\} \\ &\leq \frac{4}{N} \mathbb{M}(w)^{2} \{\mathbb{M}(w^{2}) + \mathbb{M}(w^{2}\varphi^{2})\} \\ &\leq \frac{4}{N} \frac{\mathbb{M}(w^{2})}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}} \end{split}$$

<ロ> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回>

 $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{O}$

The same article gives a dual, on almost weakest possible on test, but strong on weights:

Theorem

For test functions φ and importance sampling weights w with the obvious sufficient regularity as determined by the right hand side, we have the following bound:

$$\begin{split} \operatorname{MSE}\{\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\varphi)\} &\leq \left(\frac{2}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2}}\tilde{C}_{2}\mathbb{M}(\varphi^{2}w^{2}) + \frac{4}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{4}}\mathbb{M}(|\varphi w|^{2d})^{\frac{1}{d}}\tilde{C}_{2e}^{\frac{1}{e}}\mathbb{M}(w^{2e})^{\frac{1}{e}} \\ &+ \frac{4}{\mathbb{M}(w)^{2(1+\frac{1}{p})}}\mathbb{M}(|\varphi|^{2p})^{\frac{1}{p}}\tilde{C}_{2q(1+\frac{1}{p})}^{\frac{1}{q}}\mathbb{M}(w^{2q(1+\frac{1}{p})})^{\frac{1}{q}}\right) \cdot N^{-1} \end{split}$$

The constants \tilde{C}_t , $t \ge 2$ are determined by the Marcinkiewicz-Zygmund inequality, as in **?**. Furthermore, the pairs of parameters d, e, and p, q are conjugate indices.

Intro to MC A first take IS Resampling

MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

$$ESS(W^{1:N}) := \frac{1}{\sum_{n=1}^{N} (W^n)^2} = \frac{\{\sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)\}^2}{\sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)^2}$$
$$\frac{N}{ESS(W^{1:N})} = \frac{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)^2}{\{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)\}^2}$$
$$= 1 + \frac{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)^2 - \{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)\}^2}{\{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{N} w(X^n)\}^2}$$

- MC est of MSE; set N for desirable accuracy
- One plus 'coefficient of variation'
- As sample size: $ESS(W^{1:N}) \in [1, N]$; if k weights equal one, and N - k weights equal zero, then ESS($W^{1:N}$) = k; semi(pseudo)-formal justification in Section 2.5.3 of Liu and Chen (2008), "rule of thumb" ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ▲□

ESS and information

2nd term converges to chi-square pseudo-distance between $\mathbb M$ and $\mathbb Q$:

$$\mathbb{M}\left[\left\{\frac{d\mathbb{Q}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbb{M}}-1\right\}^{2}\right]=\mathrm{Var}_{\mathbb{M}}\left(\frac{w}{\mathbb{M}(w)}\right)$$

<ロ> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回>

 $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{O}$

ESS and information

2nd term converges to chi-square pseudo-distance between $\mathbb M$ and $\mathbb Q$:

$$\mathbb{M}\left[\left\{\frac{d\mathbb{Q}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbb{M}}-1\right\}^{2}
ight]=\mathrm{Var}_{\mathbb{M}}\left(\frac{w}{\mathbb{M}(w)}
ight)$$

Entropy:

$$\operatorname{Ent}(W^{1:N}) := -\sum_{n=1}^{N} W^n \log(W^n),$$

which is, up to a constant:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W^{n} \log(NW^{n}) = \log N - \operatorname{Ent}(W^{1:N})$$
$$\rightarrow D_{KL}(\mathbb{Q}||\mathbb{M}) := \int \log\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}\mathbb{Q}}{\mathrm{d}\mathbb{M}}\right) \mathrm{d}\mathbb{Q}$$

Optimality: $W^n = 1/N$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Random weight methodology

 \mathbb{Q} target, \mathbb{M} proposal, $w(x) \propto \mathrm{d}\mathbb{Q}/\mathrm{d}\mathbb{M}$. Then,

$$(X^n,\mathcal{W}^n)\,,\quad X^n\sim\mathbb{M}\,,\quad \mathbb{E}[\mathcal{W}^n|X^n]=crac{w(X^n)}{\mathbb{M}(w)}\,,$$

for auto-normalised IS; $W^n = \mathcal{W}^n / \sum_i \mathcal{W}^i$ and $c = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}]$ Actually,

$$\frac{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}\varphi(X)]}{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}]} = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{Q}}[\varphi(X)].$$

 \mathcal{W}^n : random weights

• Special case: auto-norm IS; $\mathcal{W}^n = w(X^n)$, $c = \mathbb{M}(w)$, $\operatorname{Var}(\mathcal{W}^n | X^n) = 0$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Intro to MC IS Resampling

A first take MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

Random weights everywhere!

- i-like problems, e.g. inference for stochastic differential equations ¹
- resampling TBC

¹Fearnhead, P., Papaspiliopoulos, O., and Roberts, G. O. (2008). Particle filters for partially observed diffusions. J. R. Stat. Soc. Ser. B Stat. Methodol., 70(4):755–777 $\rightarrow 4$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Importance sampling and resampling

MSE of RWIS

$$\sqrt{N}\left\{\frac{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(X^{n})\mathcal{W}^{n}}{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\mathcal{W}^{n}}-\mathbb{Q}(\varphi)\right\} \Rightarrow \mathcal{N}\left(0,\frac{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}^{2}\overline{\varphi}(X)^{2}]}{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}]^{2}}\right).$$

But note:

$$\begin{split} \frac{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}^2]}{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}]^2} &= \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}\left[\mathbb{E}_{M}\left[\left(\frac{\mathcal{W}}{c}\right)^2 \mid X\right]\right] \\ &\geq \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}\left[\mathbb{E}_{M}\left[\frac{\mathcal{W}}{c} \mid X\right]^2\right] = \frac{\mathbb{M}(w^2)}{\mathbb{M}(w)^2} \,, \end{split}$$

Rao-Blackwellization ; why randomise?

Non-negative weights and auxiliary variables

Suppose weights are non-negative. Then particle approximation

$$\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\mathrm{d} x) := \sum_{n=1}^{N} W^{n} \delta_{X^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x), \qquad X^{n} \sim \mathbb{M}, \qquad W^{n} = \frac{\mathcal{W}^{n}}{\sum_{m=1}^{N} \mathcal{W}^{m}}$$

Let Z s.t.

$$Z|X = x \sim M(x, \mathrm{d}z)$$
 $\mathcal{W} = f(Z, X)$ where $\int f(z, x)M(x, \mathrm{d}z) = c rac{w(x)}{\mathbb{M}(w)}$

Define *auxiliary distribution*

$$\mathbb{Q}(\mathrm{d}x,\mathrm{d}z) = \frac{1}{c}f(z,x)\mathbb{M}(\mathrm{d}x)M(x,\mathrm{d}z)$$

Signed weights

Interpretation of weights as unnormalised probabilities is integral part of various algorithms: particle approximation; resampling; Bayes; particle filters. But, often the construction does not ensure this

Methodology for turning a stream of proper weights into non-negative $^{\rm 2}$

• Truncate:

$$\mathbb{E}[\{\mathcal{W}^{trunc} - w(x)\}^2 | X = x] \leq \mathbb{E}[\{\mathcal{W} - w(x)\}^2 | X = x]$$

but hard to control approximation bias (no proper weights)

²Fearnhead, P., Papaspiliopoulos, O., Roberts, G. O., and Stuart, A. (2010).

Random-weight particle filtering of continuous time processes.

Intro to MC
IS
ResamplingA first take
MSE & ESS
Random Weight ISWald identity and IS

One version: \mathcal{W}_j for j = 1, 2, ... have common mean $\mathbb{E}[\mathcal{W}]$, common absolute moment $\mathbb{E}[|\mathcal{W}_j|] = a < \infty$, and T is a stopping time with $\mathbb{E}[T] < \infty$, then

$$\mathbb{E}\left[\sum_{j=1}^{\mathcal{T}}\mathcal{W}_{j}
ight]=\mathbb{E}[\mathcal{T}]\mathbb{E}[\mathcal{W}];$$

(proof by OST)

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Intro to MC A first take IS MSE & ESS Resampling Random Weight IS	
---	--

Within RWIS: \mathcal{W}_{j}^{n} for j = 1, 2, ..., are independent copies of \mathcal{W}^{n} ;

$$S_l^n = \sum_{j=1}^l \mathcal{W}_j^n \quad T^n = \min\{l : S_l^n \ge 0\}$$

then provided $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{T}^n] < \infty$

$$\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[S^n_{T^n}|X^n] = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[T^n]c\frac{w(X^n)}{\mathbb{M}(w)}$$

Idea in Feanhead et al. is to couple the decision for all particles

٠

Wald RWIS

Theorem

Consider an infinite array of independent r.v. \mathcal{W}_k^n for $n \in 1$: N and $k = 1, 2, \ldots$ such that $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[\mathcal{W}_k^n|X^n = x] = cw(x)/\mathbb{M}(w)$ and $\mathbb{E}[(\mathcal{W}_k^n)^4] < \infty$. Assume that, for fixed n, \mathcal{W}_k^n are identically distributed for all k, with the same distribution as \mathcal{W}^n . Let

$$S_l^n = \sum_{k=1}^l \mathcal{W}_k^n,$$

and define the stopping time $T = \min\{I : S_I^n \ge 0 \ \forall n \in 1 : N\}$. Then $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[T] < \infty$, and

$$\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[S_T^n|X^n=x] = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[T]c\frac{w(X^n)}{\mathbb{M}(w)}$$

n a r

Intro to MC
IS
ResamplingA first take
MSE & ESS
Random Weight ISConditions-complexity

- Fourth moment condition
- Exponential moment condition: $\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{M}}[T] = \mathcal{O}(\log N)$

 $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{O}$

Intro to MC	A first take
IS	MSE & ESS
Resampling	Random Weight IS
CoD	

Mantra: importance sampling suffers from the curse of dimensionality

• Yes and potentially very severely:

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) = \prod_{s=0}^t \mathbb{Q}(\mathrm{d} x_s) \quad \mathbb{M}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) = \prod_{s=0}^t \mathbb{M}(\mathrm{d} x_s) \quad w_t(x_{0:t}) = \frac{\mathrm{d} \mathbb{Q}_t}{\mathrm{d} \mathbb{M}_t}$$

Then

$$\operatorname{Var}_{\mathbb{M}}(w_t) = \mathbb{M}_t(w_t^2) - 1 = r^{t+1} - 1 \quad \text{where } r = \mathbb{M}(w_0^2) \ge 1$$

This is not a (completely) fictitious setting

 \mathcal{A}

 Intro to MC
 A first take

 IS
 MSE & ESS

 Resampling
 Random Weight IS

Variance will *always* grow with dimension³ Suppose \mathbb{Q}_s and \mathbb{M}_s have densities, q_s and m_s and

$$q_s(x_s|x_{0:s-1}) = rac{q_s(x_{0:s})}{q_{s-1}(x_{0:s-1})} \, .$$

Then,

$$w_s(x_{0:s}) = w_{s-1}(x_{0:s-1}) \frac{q_s(x_s|x_{0:s-1})}{m_s(x_s|x_{0:s-1})},$$

which indexed by "time" s, is a martingale

³Kong, A., Liu, J. S., and Wong, W. H. (1994). Sequential imputation and Bayesian missing data problems. J. Am. Statist. Assoc., 89:278–288

SQ P

Intro to MC IS Resampling A first take MSE & ESS Random Weight IS

Polynomial growth of errors

- \mathbb{Q}_t posterior distribution of θ given t i.i.d observations
- \mathbb{M} prior

Under standard regularity conditions the variance of weights increases as some power of t^4 that depends on the dimension of θ

⁴Chopin, N. (2004). Central limit theorem for sequential Monte Carlo methods and its application to Bayesian inference. Ann. Statist., 32(6):2385–2411

3





2 IS

- A first take
- MSE & ESS
- Random Weight IS

3 Resampling

◆□ > <□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □



$$\mathbb{Q}_0^N(\mathrm{d} x_0) = \sum_{n=1}^N W_0^n \delta_{X_0^n}, \qquad X^n \sim \mathbb{M}_0, \qquad W_0^n = \frac{w_0(X_0^n)}{\sum_{m=1}^N w_0(X_0^m)},$$

and now interested in

$$(\mathbb{Q}_0 M_1)(\mathrm{d} x_{0:1}) = \mathbb{Q}_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) M_1(x_0, \mathrm{d} x_1).$$

Two solutions:

◆□ > <□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Intro to MC	
IS	
Resampling	
First solution	
First solution	

Extend $X_1^n \sim M_1(X_0^n, dx_1)$. This ignores the intermediate approx $\mathbb{Q}_0^N(dx_0)$.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● の Q @



$$\mathbb{Q}_0^N(\mathrm{d} x_0)M_1(x_0,\mathrm{d} x_1) = \sum_{n=1}^N W_0^n M_1(X_0^n,\mathrm{d} x_1)$$

and now we **sample** from this approximation:

$$rac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^N \delta_{\widetilde{X}^n_{0:1}}, \qquad ext{where } \widetilde{X}^n_{0:1} \sim \mathbb{Q}^N_0(\mathrm{d} x_0) M_1(x_0,\mathrm{d} x_1).$$

One way to obtain such samples is to do:

$$\widetilde{X}_{0:1}^n = (X_0^{\mathcal{A}_1^n}, X_1^n), \qquad \mathcal{A}_1^{1:N} \sim \mathcal{M}(W_0^{1:N}), \qquad X_1^n \sim \mathcal{M}_1(X_0^{\mathcal{A}_1^n}, \mathrm{d} x_1)$$

▲□▶ ▲圖▶ ▲필▶ ▲필▶ _ 필.

In	tro to MC
	IS
R	esampling

Why resample??

< ロ > < 団 > < 巨 > < 巨 > < 巨 > < 巨 < つ < (?)



- $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}$, \mathbb{M}_0 is $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$, $w_0(x) = \mathbb{1}(|x| > \tau)$; thus \mathbb{Q}_0 is a truncated Gaussian distribution
- $M_1(x_0, \mathrm{d} x_1)$ so that $X_1 = \rho X_0 + \sqrt{1 \rho^2} U$, with $U \sim N(0, 1)$
- $\varphi(x_1) = x_1$; note that $(\mathbb{Q}_0 M_1)(\varphi) = 0$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● のへで

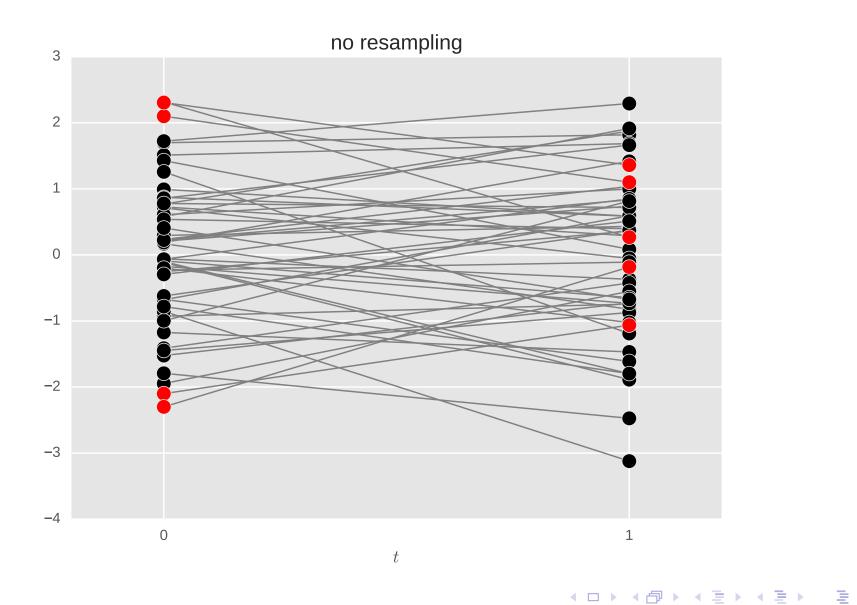


- $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}$, \mathbb{M}_0 is $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$, $w_0(x) = \mathbb{1}(|x| > \tau)$; thus \mathbb{Q}_0 is a truncated Gaussian distribution
- $M_1(x_0, \mathrm{d} x_1)$ so that $X_1 = \rho X_0 + \sqrt{1 \rho^2} U$, with $U \sim N(0, 1)$
- $\varphi(x_1) = x_1$; note that $(\mathbb{Q}_0 M_1)(\varphi) = 0$

$$\widehat{\varphi}_{\mathrm{IS}} = \sum_{n=1}^{N} W_0^n X_1^n, \qquad (X_0^n, X_1^n) \sim \mathbb{M}_0 M_1$$
$$\widehat{\varphi}_{\mathrm{IR}} = N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{N} X_1^n, \qquad X_1^n \sim \mathbb{Q}_0^N M_1$$

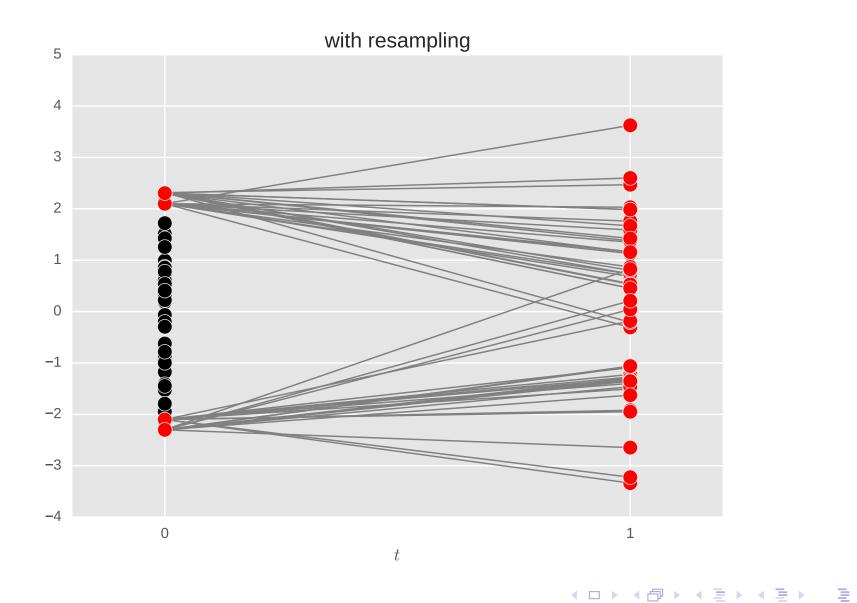
▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● のへで





nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Importance samp





Intro to MC	
IS	
Resampling	

Assume that, among the N particles X_0^n , k have a non-zero weight, then

$$\operatorname{var}[\widehat{\varphi}_{\mathrm{IS}}] \approx \frac{\rho^2 C(\tau)}{k} + \frac{1 - \rho^2}{k}$$
$$\operatorname{var}[\widehat{\varphi}_{\mathrm{IR}}] \approx \frac{\rho^2 C'(\tau)}{k} + \frac{1 - \rho^2}{N}$$

In words:

- IS: only *k* particles are "alive".
- IR: all *N* particles are alive, but they are correlated.
- if ρ not too large, IR beats IS.
- If τ gets larger and larger, relative performance of IS vs IR deteriorates quickly. \Rightarrow Resampling is the safe option.

Intro to MC	
IS	
Resampling	
	IS

Resampling sacrifices the past to save the present.

Intro to MC IS Resampling

Resampling adds noise

Resampling amounts to replacing

$$\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\mathrm{d} x) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} W^{n} \delta_{X^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x)$$

with

$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}O^{n}\delta_{X^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x)$$

where O^n is the **number of off-springs** of particle *n*. Note O^n is random, takes values in $\{1, \ldots, N\}$, and is such that

$$\mathbb{E}[O^n] = NW^n$$

<ロ> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回>

Intro to MC IS Resampling

Resampling adds noise

Resampling amounts to replacing

$$\mathbb{Q}^{N}(\mathrm{d} x) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} W^{n} \delta_{X^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x)$$

with

$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}O^{n}\delta_{X^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x)$$

where O^n is the **number of off-springs** of particle *n*. Note O^n is random, takes values in $\{1, \ldots, N\}$, and is such that

$$\mathbb{E}[O^n] = NW^n$$

(Unbiasedness property of resampling)

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Intro to MC IS Resampling Resampling: drawbacks?

Assume that $W^n \approx 1/N$ (weights are nearly constant). Then

 $O^n \approx \operatorname{Binomial}(N, 1/N)$

and in particular

$$P(O^n = 0) = (1 - \frac{1}{N})^N \approx e^{-1} \approx 0.37$$

which seems quite wasteful.

<ロ> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回> < 回>

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Intro to MC IS Resampling Resampling: drawbacks?

Assume that $W^n \approx 1/N$ (weights are nearly constant). Then

 $O^n \approx \operatorname{Binomial}(N, 1/N)$

and in particular

$$P(O^n = 0) = (1 - \frac{1}{N})^N \approx e^{-1} \approx 0.37$$

which seems quite **wasteful**. Solutions:

- Resample only when ESS is low.
- Use better (=less noisy) resampling schemes.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ■

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

How to resample

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Section 1

Multinomial resampling

Inverse CDF

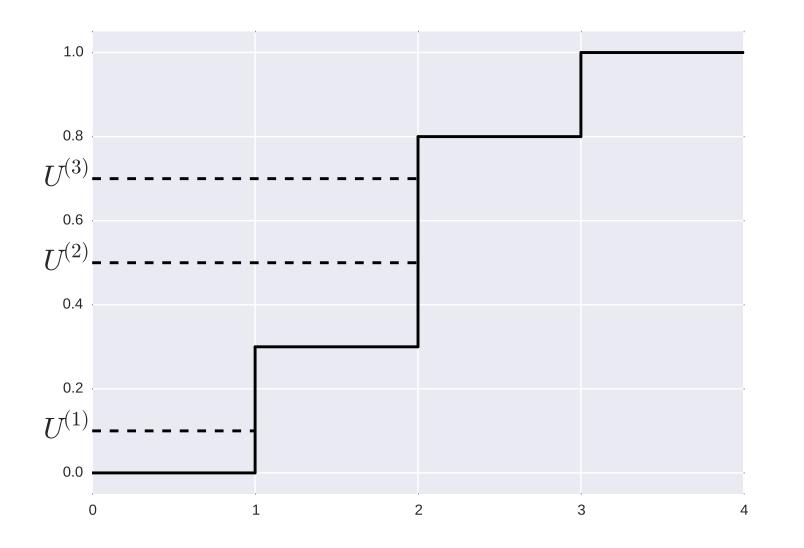


Figure 1: CDF $F(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^n \mathbb{1}\{n \le x\}$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

How to resample

inverse CDF algorithm

In the resampling step, we must simulate N times from $\mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$, the multinomial distribution that generates label n with probability W_t^n .

Inverse transform method: generate N uniform variates U^m , $m \in 1$: N, and set A_t^m according to:

$$C^{n-1} \leq U^m \leq C^n \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad A^m_t = n$$

where the C^{n} 's are the cumulative weights:

$$C^0 = 0, \quad C^n = C^{n-1} + W_t^n.$$

inverse CDF algorithm

In the resampling step, we must simulate N times from $\mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$, the multinomial distribution that generates label n with probability W_t^n .

Inverse transform method: generate N uniform variates U^m , $m \in 1$: N, and set A_t^m according to:

$$C^{n-1} \leq U^m \leq C^n \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad A^m_t = n$$

where the C^{n} 's are the cumulative weights:

$$C^0 = 0, \quad C^n = C^{n-1} + W_t^n.$$

This suggests resampling costs $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$; however, if we are given uniforms that are already **sorted**, $U^{(1)} < \ldots < U^{(N)}$, then only 2N comparisons need to be performed.

Resampling based on sorted uniforms

```
Algorithm 1: Inverse CDF (finite distribution)
Input: W^{1:N}, and 0 < U^{(1)} < \ldots < U^{(N)} < 1.
Output: A^{1:N} (N indices in 1 : N).
Function icdf(W^{1:N}, U^{(1:N)}):
    s \leftarrow W^1, m \leftarrow 1
    for n = 1 to N do
         while s < U^{(n)} do
       egin{array}{c} m \leftarrow m+1 \ s \leftarrow s+W^m \end{array}
         A^n \leftarrow m
```

How to generate sorted uniforms

Generate N uniforms, then sort: O(N log N) complexity (not so bad).

How to generate sorted uniforms

- Generate N uniforms, then sort: O(N log N) complexity (not so bad).
- \$\mathcal{O}(N)\$ complexity by using properties of the Poisson process: see next slide.

Uniform spacings algorithm

Algorithm 2: Uniform spacings

```
Input: Integer N.
```

```
Output: Ordered sequence 0 < U^{(1)} < ... < U^{(N)} < 1.
```

Function uniform_spacings(N):

```
S^{0} \leftarrow 0
for n = 1 to (N + 1) do
\begin{bmatrix} E^{n} \sim \mathcal{E}(1) \\ S^{n} \leftarrow S^{n-1} + E^{n} \end{bmatrix}
for n = 1 to N do
\begin{bmatrix} U^{(n)} \leftarrow S^{n}/S^{N+1} \end{bmatrix}
```

Section 2

Alternative resampling schemes

Motivation for alternative resampling schemes

We motivated resampling as a way to sample the ancestor X_{t-1}^n from the joint distribution:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W^n \delta_{X_0^n}(\mathrm{d} x_0) M_1(X_0^n, \mathrm{d} x_1)$$

Now imagine $W_{t-1}^n = 1/N$ for all *n*. The probability of never selecting ancestor X_{t-1}^n is $(1 - 1/N)^N \approx \exp(-1) \approx 0.37$. Seems quite wasteful.

Let $O^n = \sum_{m=1}^N \mathbb{1}\{A^m = n\}$ (number of offsprings). We would like to derive resampling schemes such that

$$\mathbb{E}[O^n] = NW^n$$

while having lower variance than multinomial resampling.

Residual resampling

Let $frac(x) = x - \lfloor x \rfloor$, and take

$$O^n = \lfloor NW^n
floor + \widetilde{O}^n$$

with \tilde{O}^n taking values in \mathbb{Z}^+ , and such that $\mathbb{E}[\tilde{O}^n] = \operatorname{frac}(NW^n)$. To generate the \tilde{O}^n , use multinomial resampling, based on weights $r^n = \operatorname{frac}(NW^n)/R$, with $R = \sum_{n=1}^N \operatorname{frac}(NW^n)$.

Residual resampling: the algorithm

Input: normalised weights $W^{1:N}$

Output: $A^{1:N} \in 1:N$

(a) Compute $r^n = \operatorname{frac}(NW^n)$ (for each $n \in 1 : N$) and $R = \sum_{n=1}^{N} r^n$.

- (b) Construct $A^{1:(N-R)}$ as a vector of size (N R) that contains $\lfloor NW^n \rfloor$ copies of value *n* for each $n \in 1 : N$.
- (c) Sample $A^{N-R+1:N} \sim \mathcal{M}(r^{1:N}/R)$ using multinomial resampling.

Stratified and systematic resampling

We defined multinomial resampling as some operation involving N sorted **IID** uniforms $U^{(n)}$. Taking instead

$$\mathcal{U}^{(n)} \sim \mathcal{U}\left(\frac{n-1}{N}, \frac{n}{N}\right)$$

gives stratified resampling. Reducing randomness further, taking

$$U^{(n)}=(n-1+U)/N$$

(based on a *single* uniform $U \sim U(0, 1)$) leads to **systematic** resampling.

Which resampling scheme to use in practice?

- systematic resampling is pretty popular: easy to implement, fast, seems to "work well".
- Recent theoretical study suggests stratified resampling has better properties.
- In practice, what matters most is to avoid multinomial resampling.

Particle filtering

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Section 1

Objectives

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particle filtering



- introduce a generic PF algorithm for a given Feynman-Kac model $\{(M_t, G_t)\}_{t=0}^T$
- discuss the different algorithms one may obtain for a given state-space model, by using different Feynman-Kac formalisms.
- give more details on the implementation, complexity, and so on of the algorithm.

Section 2

The algorithm

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particle filtering

Input

- A Feynman-Kac model $\{(M_t, G_t)\}_{t=0}^T$ such that:
 - the weight function G_t may be evaluated pointwise (for all t);
 - it is possible to simulate from $M_0(dx_0)$ and from $M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ (for any x_{t-1} and t)
- The number of particles N

Structure

Algorithm 1: Basic PF algorithm

At time 0:

(a) Generate X₀ⁿ ~ M₀(dx₀).
(b) Compute w₀ⁿ = G₀(X₀ⁿ), and W₀ⁿ = w₀ⁿ / ∑_{m=1}^N w₀^m.
Recursively, for t = 1, ..., T:
(a) Generate ancestor variables A_tⁿ ~ M(W_{t-1}^{1:N}).
(b) Generate X_tⁿ ~ M_t(X_{t-1}^{A_tⁿ}, dx_t).
(c) Compute w_tⁿ = G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_tⁿ}, X_tⁿ), and W_tⁿ = w_tⁿ / ∑_{m=1}^N w_t^m.

the algorithm delivers the following approximations at each time *t*:

$$\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \delta_{X_{t}^{n}} \quad \text{approximates } \mathbb{Q}_{t-1}(dx_{t})$$
$$\mathbb{Q}_{t}^{N}(dx_{t}) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t}^{n} \delta_{X_{t}^{n}} \quad \text{approximates } \mathbb{Q}_{t}(dx_{t})$$
$$L_{t}^{N} = \prod_{s=0}^{t} \left(\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} w_{t}^{n}\right) \quad \text{approximates } L_{t}$$

Some comments

• by *approximates*, we mean: for any test function φ , the quantity

$$\mathbb{Q}_t^N(\varphi) = \sum_{n=1}^N W_t^n \varphi(X_t^n)$$

converges to $\mathbb{Q}_t(\varphi)$ as $N \to +\infty$ (at the standard Monte Carlo rate $\mathcal{O}_P(N^{-1/2})$).

Some comments

• by *approximates*, we mean: for any test function φ , the quantity

$$\mathbb{Q}_t^N(\varphi) = \sum_{n=1}^N W_t^n \varphi(X_t^n)$$

converges to $\mathbb{Q}_t(\varphi)$ as $N \to +\infty$ (at the standard Monte Carlo rate $\mathcal{O}_P(N^{-1/2})$).

• complexity is $\mathcal{O}(N)$ per time step.

Section 3

Particle algorithms for a given state-space model

Principle

We now consider a given state-space model:

- with initial law $P_0(dx_0)$ and Markov kernel $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ for $\{X_t\}$;
- with conditional probability density $f_t(y_t|x_t)$ for $Y_t|X_t$

and discuss how the choice of a particular Feynman-Kac formalism leads to more or less efficient particle algorithms.

The bootstrap filter

Bootstrap Feynman-Kac formalism:

$$M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) = P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t), \quad G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) = f_t(y_t | x_t)$$

then \mathbb{Q}_t is the filtering distribution, L_t is the likelihood of $y_{0:t}$, and so on.

The resulting algorithm is called the **bootstrap filter**, and is particularly simple to interpret: we sample particles from Markov transition $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$, and we reweight particles according to how compatible they are with the data.

The bootstrap filter: algorithm

All operations to be performed for all $n \in 1$: N.

At time 0:

(a) Generate $X_0^n \sim P_0(\mathrm{d} x_0)$.

(b) Compute $w_0^n = f_0(y_0|X_0^n)$ and $W_0^n = w_0^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_0^m$.

Recursively, for $t = 1, \ldots, T$:

(a) Generate ancestor variables $A_t^n \in 1$: N independently from $\mathcal{M}(W_{t-1}^{1:N})$.

(b) Generate $X_t^n \sim P_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$.

(c) Compute $w_t^n = f_t(y_t|X_t^n)$ and $W_t^n = w_t^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_t^m$.

The bootstrap filter: output

$$\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \varphi(X_t^n) \quad \text{approximates } \mathbb{E}[\varphi(X_t) | Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}]$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^n \varphi(X_t^n) \quad \text{approximates } \mathbb{E}[\varphi(X_t) | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}]$$

$$L_t^N = \prod_{s=0}^t \left(\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N w_t^n \right) \quad \text{approximates } p(y_{0:t})$$

The bootstrap filter: pros and cons

Pros:

- particularly simple
- does not require to compute the density $X_t | X_{t-1}$: we can apply it to models with **intractable dynamics**

Cons:

• We simulate particles **blindly**: if $Y_t | X_t$ is very informative, few particles will get a non-negligible weight.

The guided PF

Guided Feynman-Kac formalism: M_t is a user-chosen **proposal** kernel such that $M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ dominates $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$, and

$$G_{t}(x_{t-1}, x_{t}) = \frac{f_{t}(y_{t}|x_{t})P_{t}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_{t})}{M_{t}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_{t})}$$
(1)
$$= \frac{f_{t}(y_{t}|x_{t})p_{t}(x_{t}|x_{t-1})}{m_{t}(x_{t}|x_{t-1})}$$

(assuming in the second line that both kernels admit a density wrt a common measure). We still have that $\mathbb{Q}_t(dx_t)$ is the filtering distribution, and L_t is the likelihood.

We call the resulting algorithm the **guided particle filter**, as in practice we would like to choose M_t so as to **guide** particles to regions of high likelihood.

The guided PF: choice of M_t (local optimality)

Suppose that (G_s, M_s) have been chosen to satisfy (1) for $s \le t - 1$. Among all pairs (M_t, G_t) that satisfy (1), the Markov kernel

$$M_t^{\mathrm{opt}}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) \propto f_t(y_t|x_t) P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$$

minimises the variance of the weights, $\operatorname{Var}\left[G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, X_t^n)\right]$.

Interpretation and discussion of this result

- M_t^{opt} is simply the law of X_t given X_{t-1} and Y_t . In a sense it is the perfect compromise between the information brought by $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ and by $f_t(y_t|x_t)$.
- In most practical cases, M_t^{opt} is not tractable, hence this result is mostly indicative (on how to choose M_t).
- Note also that the local optimality criterion is debatable. For instance, we do not consider the effect of *future* datapoints.

First example: Gaussian / Gaussian

Assume:

$$\begin{aligned} X_t | X_{t-1} &= x_{t-1} \sim N\left(h(x_{t-1}), \sigma_X^2\right) \\ Y_t | X_t &= x_t \sim N(x_t, \sigma_Y^2) \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$X_t | X_{t-1} = x_{t-1}, Y_t = y_t \sim N\left(v \times \left\{\frac{h(x_{t-1})}{\sigma_X^2} + \frac{y_t}{\sigma_Y^2}\right\}, v\right)$$

with
$$\frac{1}{v} = \frac{1}{\sigma_X^2} + \frac{1}{\sigma_Y^2}$$
.

First example: Gaussian / Gaussian

Assume:

$$\begin{aligned} X_t | X_{t-1} &= x_{t-1} \sim N\left(h(x_{t-1}), \sigma_X^2\right) \\ Y_t | X_t &= x_t \sim N(x_t, \sigma_Y^2) \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$X_t | X_{t-1} = x_{t-1}, Y_t = y_t \sim N\left(v \times \left\{\frac{h(x_{t-1})}{\sigma_X^2} + \frac{y_t}{\sigma_Y^2}\right\}, v\right)$$

with $\frac{1}{v} = \frac{1}{\sigma_X^2} + \frac{1}{\sigma_Y^2}$. Useful e.g. for Ricker Model in Ecology (non-linear *h*).

Second example: stochastic volatility

There, the log-density of $X_t | X_{t-1}, Y_t$ is (up to a constant):

$$-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \{x_t - \mu - \phi(x_{t-1} - \mu)\}^2 - \frac{x_t}{2} - \frac{e^{-x_t}}{2}y_t^2$$

We can use $e^{x-x_0} \approx 1 + (x - x_0) + (x - x_0)^2/2$ to get a Gaussian approximation.

Third example: bearings-only tracking

In that case, $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ imposes deterministic constraints:

$$X_t(k) = X_{t-1}(k) + X_{t-1}(k+2), \quad k = 1, 2$$

We can choose a M_t that imposes the same constraints. However, in this case, we find that

$$M_t^{\mathrm{opt}}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) = P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t).$$

Discuss.

Guided particle filter pros and cons

Pro:

• may work much better that bootstrap filter when $Y_t|X_t$ is informative (provided we are able to derive a good proposal).

Cons:

- requires to be able to compute density $p_t(x_t|x_{t-1})$.
- sometimes local optimality criterion is not so sound.

The auxiliary particle filter

In the auxiliary Feynman-Kac formalism, an extra degree of freedom is gained by introducing **auxiliary** function η_t , and set:

$$G_0(x_0) = f_0(y_0|x_0) \frac{P_0(\mathrm{d}x_0)}{M_0(\mathrm{d}x_0)} \eta_0(x_0),$$

$$G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) = f_t(y_t|x_t) \frac{P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_t)}{M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_t)} \frac{\eta_t(x_t)}{\eta_{t-1}(x_{t-1})}.$$

so that

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t}) \propto \mathbb{P}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:t} | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})\eta_t(x_t)$$

and we recover the filtering distribution by reweighting by $1/\eta_t$. **Idea**: choose η_t so that G_t is as constant as possible.

Output of APF

Let
$$\tilde{w}_t^n := w_t^n / \eta_t(X_t^n)$$
, $\tilde{W}_t^n := \tilde{w}_t^n / \sum_{m=1}^N \tilde{w}_t^m$, then

$$\frac{1}{\sum_{m=1}^N \frac{\tilde{W}_t^m}{f(y_t|X_t^m)}} \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\tilde{W}_t^n}{f_t(y_t|X_t^n)} \varphi(X_t^n) \quad \text{approx. } \mathbb{E}[\varphi(X_t)|Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}]$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^N \tilde{W}_t^n \varphi(X_t^n) \quad \text{approx. } \mathbb{E}[\varphi(X_t)|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}]$$

$$\mathcal{L}_t^N \times N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^N \tilde{w}_t^n \quad \text{approx. } p(y_{0:t})$$

Local optimality for M_t and η_t

For a given state-space model, suppose that (G_s, M_s) have been chosen to satisfy (1) for $s \leq t - 2$, and M_{t-1} has also been chosen. Among all pairs (M_t, G_t) that satisfy (1) and functions η_{t-1} , the Markov kernel

$$M_t^{\text{opt}}(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t) = \frac{f_t(y_t|x_t)}{\int_{\mathcal{X}} f(y_t|x') P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x')} P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$$

and the function

$$\eta_{t-1}^{\text{opt}}(x_{t-1}) = \int_{\mathcal{X}} f(y_t | x') P_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x')$$

minimise
$$\operatorname{Var}\left[G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, X_t^n)/\eta_t(X_t^n)\right].$$

Interpretation and discussion

- We find again that the optimal proposal is the law of X_t given X_{t-1} and Y_t. In addition, the optimal auxiliary function is the probability density of Y_t given X_{t-1}.
- For this ideal algorithm, we would have

$$G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) = \eta_t^{\mathrm{opt}}(x_t);$$

the density of Y_{t+1} given $X_t = x_t$; not constant, but intuitively less variable than $f_t(y_t|x_t)$ (as in the bootstrap filter).

Example: stochastic volatility

We use the same ideas as for the guided PF: Taylor expansion of log-density, then we integrate wrt x_t .

APF pros and cons

Pros:

• usually gives some extra performance.

Cons:

- a bit difficult to interpret and use;
- they are some (contrived) examples where the auxiliary particle filter actually performs worse than the bootstrap filter.

Note on the generality of APF

From the previous descriptions, we see that:

- the guided PF is a particular instance of the auxiliary particle filter (take $\eta_t = 1$);
- the bootstrap filter is a particular instance of the guided $PF(take M_t = P_t)$.

This is why some recent papers focus on the APF.

Which resampling to use in practice?

- Systematic resampling is fast, easy to implement, and seems to work best; but no supporting theory.
- We **do** have some theoretical results regarding the fact that multinomial resampling is dominated by most other resampling schemes. (So don't use it!)
- On the other hand, multinomial resampling is easier to study formally (because again it is based on IID sampling).

Section 4

When to resample?

Resampling or not resampling, that is the question

For the moment, we resample every time. When we introduced resampling, we explained that the decision to resample was based on a trade-off: adding noise at time t - 1, while hopefully reducing noise at time t (assuming that $\{X_t\}$ forgets its past).

Resampling or not resampling, that is the question

For the moment, we resample every time. When we introduced resampling, we explained that the decision to resample was based on a trade-off: adding noise at time t - 1, while hopefully reducing noise at time t (assuming that $\{X_t\}$ forgets its past).

We do know that never resample would be a bad idea: consider $M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ defined such that the X_t are IID $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$, $G_t(x_t) = \mathbbm{1}(x_t > 0)$. (More generally, recall the curse of dimensionality of importance sampling.)

The ESS recipe

Trigger the resampling step whenever the variability of the weights is too large, as measured by e.g. the ESS (effective sample size):

$$\mathrm{ESS}(W_t^{1:N}) := \frac{1}{\sum_{n=1}^N (W_t^n)^2} = \frac{\{\sum_{n=1}^N w_t(X^n)\}^2}{\sum_{n=1}^N w_t(X^n)^2}.$$

Recall that $\text{ESS}(W_t^{1:N}) \in [1, N]$, and that if k weights equal one, and N - k weights equal zero, then $\text{ESS}(W_t^{1:N}) = k$.

PF with adaptive resampling

```
(Same operations at t = 0.)
```

Recursively, for $t = 1, \ldots, T$:

(a) If
$$\operatorname{ESS}(W_{t-1}^{1:N}) < \gamma N$$

generate ancestor variables $A_t^{1:N}$ from resampling distribution $\mathcal{RS}(W_{t-1}^{1:N})$, and set $\hat{W}_{t-1}^n = 1/N$;

Else (no resampling)

set $A_t^n = n$ and $\hat{W}_{t-1}^n = W_{t-1}^n$

(b) Generate $X_t^n \sim M_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$.

(c) Compute
$$w_t^n = (N\hat{W}_{t-1}^n) \times G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, X_t^n),$$

 $L_t^N = L_{t-1}^N \{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^N w_t^n\}, W_t^n = w_t^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_t^m\}$

Section 5

Numerical experiments

Linear Gaussian example

$$X_t = \rho X_{t-1} + \sigma_X U_t$$
$$Y_t = X_t + \sigma_Y V_t$$

with
$$\rho = 0.9$$
, $\sigma_X = 1$, $\sigma_Y = 0.2$.

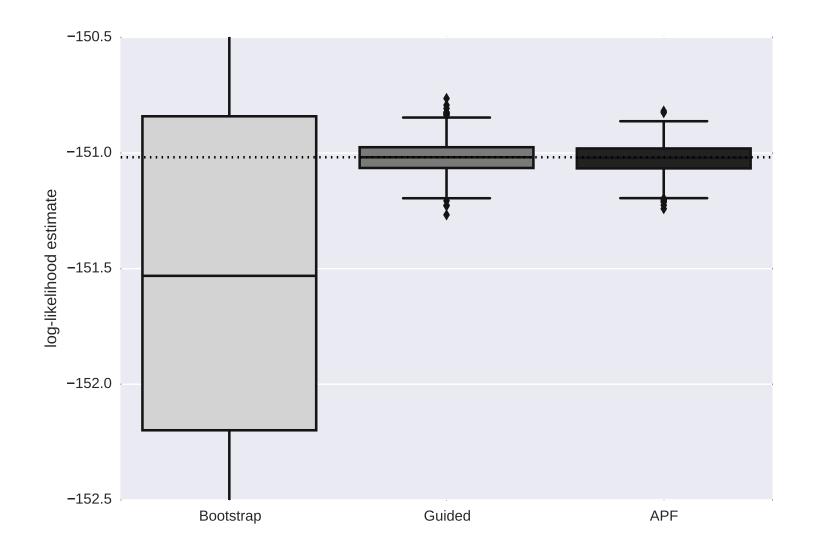
Linear Gaussian example

$$X_t = \rho X_{t-1} + \sigma_X U_t$$
$$Y_t = X_t + \sigma_Y V_t$$

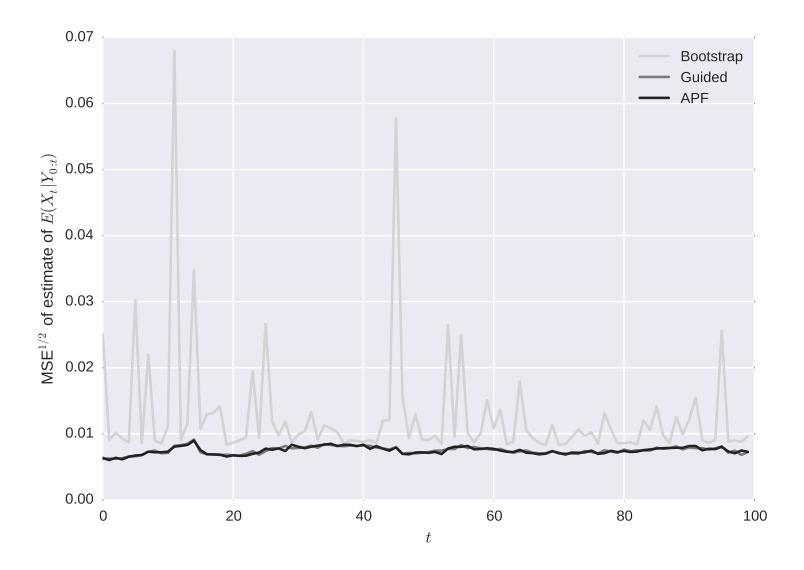
with
$$\rho = 0.9$$
, $\sigma_X = 1$, $\sigma_Y = 0.2$.

We can implement the perfect guided filter and the perfect APF.

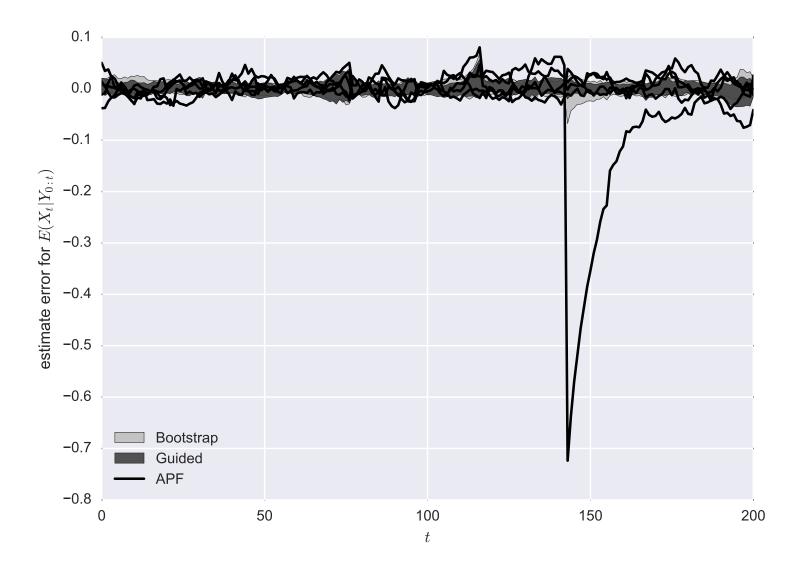
Likelihood



Filtering



Stochastic volatility



Particle smoothing

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Section 1

Introduction

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particle smoothing



transform/extend particle *filtering* algorithms so as to approximate the smoothing distribution $\mathbb{P}_t(dx_{0:t}|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$ for a given state-space model.

Distinctions

- on-line vs off-line smoothing: recursively, at each time t; or only at some final time T. . .
- fixed lag vs complete smoothing: recover the law of $X_{t-h:t}$ versus the law of the complete trajectory $X_{0:t}$ (in both cases, given the data $y_{0:t}$.

Distinctions

- on-line vs off-line smoothing: recursively, at each time t; or only at some final time T....
- fixed lag vs complete smoothing: recover the law of $X_{t-h:t}$ versus the law of the complete trajectory $X_{0:t}$ (in both cases, given the data $y_{0:t}$.
- class of test functions? some algorithms will apply only to additive functions.

An important motivation

 \sim

with

Assuming densities for process $\{X_t\}$, the score can be expressed as the smoothing expectation of an additive function:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p_T^{\theta}(y_{0:T}) = \mathbb{E}^{\theta} \left[\varphi_T(X_{0:T}) \right] | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T} \right]$$

$$\varphi_{\mathcal{T}}(x_{0:\mathcal{T}}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left\{ \log p_0^{\theta}(x_0) + \sum_{t=1}^{\mathcal{T}} \log p_t^{\theta}(x_t | x_{t-1}) + \sum_{t=0}^{\mathcal{T}} \log f_t^{\theta}(y_t | x_t) \right\}$$

Important requirement

Most smoothing algorithms will require the Markov kernel $P_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$

- to admit a probability density $p_t(x_t|x_{t-1})$ (with respect to a fixed measure)
- 2 such that this PDF is computable for any x_{t-1} , x_t .

Three classes of algorithms

forward-only (on-line) smoothing

Three classes of algorithms

- forward-only (on-line) smoothing
- Backward sampling (a.k.a. FFBS for forward filtering, backward sampling; off-line)

Three classes of algorithms

- forward-only (on-line) smoothing
- Backward sampling (a.k.a. FFBS for forward filtering, backward sampling; off-line)
- Two-filter smoothing (off-line)

Three classes of algorithms

- forward-only (on-line) smoothing
- Backward sampling (a.k.a. FFBS for forward filtering, backward sampling; off-line)
- Two-filter smoothing (off-line)

Section 2

Forward-only smoothing

$\mathcal{O}(N)$ forward-only smoothing

Simplest approach: we carry forward $X_{t-h:t}$ (fixed-lag), or $X_{0:t}$ within our particle filtering algorithm.

$\mathcal{O}(N)$ forward-only smoothing

Simplest approach: we carry forward $X_{t-h:t}$ (fixed-lag), or $X_{0:t}$ within our particle filtering algorithm.

Pros: simple, complexity is $\mathcal{O}(N)$.

Con: degeneracy.

Degeneracy

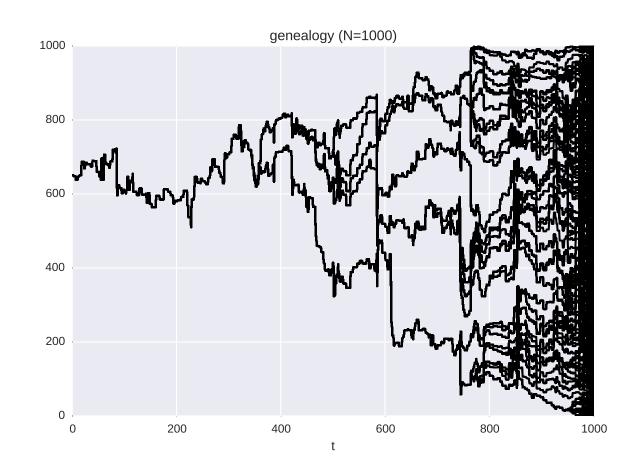


Figure 1: Genealogy of a single run of the bootstrap filter for model: $Y_t | X_t \sim \text{Poisson}(e^{X_t}), X_t | X_{t-1} \sim N(\mu + \rho(X_{t-1} - \mu), \sigma^2).$

$\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ forward-only smoothing for additive functions

For $\varphi_t(x_{0:t}) = \psi_0(x_0) + \sum_{s=1}^t \psi_s(x_{s-1}, x_s)$ we have:

Proposition

For $t \geq 0$, let

$$\Phi_t(x_t) := \mathbb{E}[\varphi_t(X_{0:t})|X_t = x_t, Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}],$$

then

$$\mathbb{E}[\varphi_t(X_{0:t})|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}] = \mathbb{E}[\Phi_t(X_t)|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}]$$

and the Φ_t 's may be computed recursively as: $\Phi_0(x_0) = \psi_0(x_0)$,

$$\Phi_t(x_t) = \mathbb{E}\left[\Phi_{t-1}(X_{t-1}) + \psi_t(X_{t-1}, x_t) | X_t = x_t, Y_{0:t-1} = y_{0:t-1}\right]$$

for t>0.

$\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ forward-only smoothing: algorithm

Algorithm 1: $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ on-line smoothing (additive functions)

At iteration $t \in 0$: T of a particle filtering algorithm:

```
for n = 1 to N do
```

```
if t = 0 then

\lfloor \Phi_0^n(X_0^n) \leftarrow \psi_0(X_0^n)

else
```

$$\Phi_{t}^{n}(X_{t}^{n}) \leftarrow \\
\underbrace{\sum_{m=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{m} p_{t}(X_{t}^{n}|X_{t-1}^{m}) \{\Phi_{t-1}^{N}(X_{t-1}^{m}) + \psi_{t}(X_{t-1}^{m},X_{t}^{n})\}}_{\sum_{m=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{m} p_{t}(X_{t}^{n}|X_{t-1}^{m})}$$

return $\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^n \Phi_t^N(X_t^n)$ (as an approximation of $\mathbb{E}[\varphi_t(X_{0:t})|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}])$

Numerical illustration

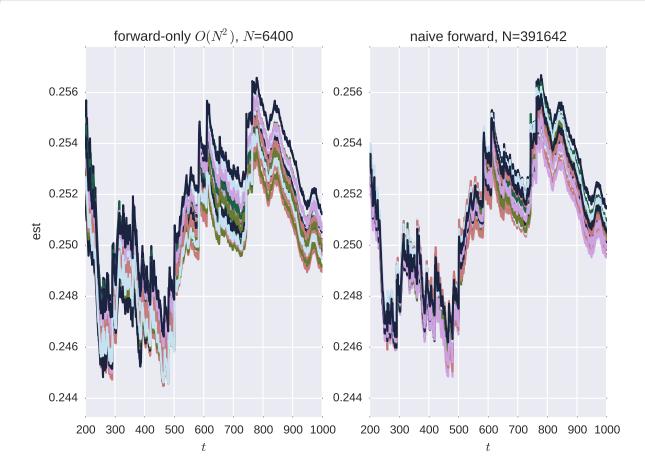


Figure 2: Smoothing expectation vs time, Same model, function φ_t is score wrt σ^2 .

Section 3

Backward sampling

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particle smoothing

Principle

Recall the backward decomposition:

$$\mathbb{P}_{T}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:T} | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) = \mathbb{P}_{T}(\mathrm{d} x_{T} | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) \prod_{t=0}^{T-1} \overleftarrow{P}_{t|t}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d} x_{t})$$

where $\overleftarrow{P}_{t|t}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d}x_t) \propto p_{t+1}(x_{t+1}|x_t)\mathbb{P}(\mathrm{d}x_t|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$

Principle

Recall the backward decomposition:

$$\mathbb{P}_{T}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:T} | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) = \mathbb{P}_{T}(\mathrm{d} x_{T} | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) \prod_{t=0}^{T-1} \overleftarrow{P}_{t|t}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d} x_{t})$$

where $\overleftarrow{P}_{t|t}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d}x_t) \propto p_{t+1}(x_{t+1}|x_t)\mathbb{P}(\mathrm{d}x_t|Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$

Idea: plug particle approximation:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^n \delta_{X_t^n} \approx \mathbb{P}_t(\mathrm{d} x_t | y_{0:t}).$$

Smoothing skeleton

$$\mathbb{P}_{T}^{N}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:T} | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) := \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{T}^{n} \delta_{X_{T}^{n}}(\mathrm{d} x_{T}) \right\} \prod_{t=0}^{T-1} \overleftarrow{P}_{t|T}^{N}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d} x_{t})$$

with

$$\overleftarrow{P}_{t|T}^{N}(x_{t+1}, \mathrm{d}x_t) \propto \sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^N p_{t+1}(x_{t+1}|X_t^n) \delta_{X_t^n}.$$

The skeleton is a discrete distribution, with support of size N^{T+1} .

Sampling from the skeleton

Algorithm 2: FFBS

Input: Output of a particle filter: particles $X_0^{1:N}, \ldots, X_T^{1:N}$,

weights
$$W_0^{1:N}, \ldots, W_T^{1:N}$$
.
Output: trajectory $(X_0^{B_0}, \ldots, X_T^{B_T})$.

$$B_{T} \sim \mathcal{M}(W_{T}^{1:N})$$
for $t = (T - 1)$ to 0 do
$$\begin{bmatrix} \widehat{w}_{t}^{n} \leftarrow W_{t}^{n} p_{t+1}(X_{t+1}^{B_{t+1}} | X_{t}^{n}) \text{ and } \widehat{W}_{t}^{n} = \widehat{w}_{t}^{n} / \sum_{m=1}^{N} \widehat{w}_{t}^{m} \\ \text{for } n = 1, \dots, N \\ B_{t} \sim \mathcal{M}(\widehat{W}_{t}^{1:N}) \end{bmatrix}$$

Notes

• cost of simulating **one** trajectory is $\mathcal{O}(TN)$.

Notes

- cost of simulating **one** trajectory is $\mathcal{O}(TN)$.
- In practice, we sample *M* times from the skeleton, and compute the following estimates

$$\frac{1}{M} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \varphi(\tilde{X}_{0:T}^{m}) \approx \mathbb{P}_{T}^{N} \left(\varphi(X_{0:T}) | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T} \right)$$
$$\approx \mathbb{E}[\varphi(X_{0:T}) | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}]$$

Notes

- cost of simulating **one** trajectory is $\mathcal{O}(TN)$.
- In practice, we sample *M* times from the skeleton, and compute the following estimates

$$\frac{1}{M} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \varphi(\tilde{X}_{0:T}^{m}) \approx \mathbb{P}_{T}^{N} \left(\varphi(X_{0:T}) | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T} \right)$$
$$\approx \mathbb{E}[\varphi(X_{0:T}) | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}]$$

• Often, people take M = N, so $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ complexity.

FFBS-reject

If we know some constant C_t such that $p_t(x_t|x_{t-1}) \leq C_t$, then we may use rejection to sample the B_t^n 's: sample $B_t \sim \mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$, accept with probability $p_{t+1}(X_{t+1}^{B_{t+1}}|X_t^{B_t})/C_t$.

FFBS-reject

If we know some constant C_t such that $p_t(x_t|x_{t-1}) \leq C_t$, then we may use rejection to sample the B_t^n 's: sample $B_t \sim \mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$, accept with probability $p_{t+1}(X_{t+1}^{B_{t+1}}|X_t^{B_t})/C_t$.

It has been claimed that such an approach has $\mathcal{O}(N)$ complexity. However, its running time is **random**, and may have infinite expectation or variance (behaves like a mixture of Geometric distributions).

FFBS-reject

If we know some constant C_t such that $p_t(x_t|x_{t-1}) \leq C_t$, then we may use rejection to sample the B_t^n 's: sample $B_t \sim \mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$, accept with probability $p_{t+1}(X_{t+1}^{B_{t+1}}|X_t^{B_t})/C_t$.

It has been claimed that such an approach has $\mathcal{O}(N)$ complexity. However, its running time is **random**, and may have infinite expectation or variance (behaves like a mixture of Geometric distributions).

Also, rejection is hard to implement efficiently in Python/R.

FFBS-MCMC

- Choose randomly one of the existing trajectories: $B_T \sim \mathcal{M}(W_T^{1:N}), B_t \leftarrow A_{t+1}^{B_{t+1}}$ (recursively).
- Apply a **single** Metropolis step to this trajectory, with proposal $\mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$ at iteration t.

FFBS-MCMC

- Choose randomly one of the existing trajectories: $B_T \sim \mathcal{M}(W_T^{1:N}), B_t \leftarrow A_{t+1}^{B_{t+1}}$ (recursively).
- Apply a **single** Metropolis step to this trajectory, with proposal $\mathcal{M}(W_t^{1:N})$ at iteration t.

This leads to an algorithm with **deterministic**, O(N) complexity; see Dau & C. (2023, Annals of Statistics) for details.

Connection between FFBS and $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ forward smoothing

The $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ forward smoothing algorithm for additive functions φ_t we presented before computes **exactly** the expectation of φ_t w.r.t. the skeleton.

Section 4

Two-filter smoothing

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particle smoothing

Two-filter smoothing: basic identity

Recall (FK chapter):

$$\mathbb{P}(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T}) \propto p_T(y_{t+1:T} | x_t) \mathbb{P}(X_t \in \mathrm{d} x_t | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t}).$$

We can approximate $\mathbb{P}(X_t \in dx_t | Y_{0:t} = y_{0:t})$ with a **forward** particle filter, but what about $p_T(y_{t+1:T} | x_t)$?

Two-filter smoothing: backward recursion

In the FK chapter, we also derived the following recursion (taking $p_T(y_{T+1:T}|x_T) = 1$):

$$p_T(y_{t+1:T}|x_t) = \int_{\mathcal{X}} f_{t+1}(y_{t+1}|x_{t+1}) p_T(y_{t+2:T}|x_{t+1}) P_{t+1}(x_t, \mathrm{d}x_{t+1}).$$

which looks suspiciously similar to the forward recursion of Feynman-Kac models.

Idea: run a **backward** particle algorithm to recursively approximate this quantity.

Information filter

Note that $p_T(y_{t+1:T}|x_t)$ is **not** (necessarily) proportional to a PDF. Hence we introduce some (user-chosen) distribution $\gamma_t(dx_t)$ dist' and tracks the sequence

$$\gamma_{t|T}(\mathrm{d} x_t) \propto \gamma_t(\mathrm{d} x_t) p_T(y_{t+1:T}|x_t).$$

Problem: how to choose the γ_t 's for *best* performance?

Two-filter estimate

To approximate the smoothing expectation of function $\varphi_{t+1}(X_t, X_{t+1})$, plug the two particle approximations in the two-filter identity:

$$\frac{1}{\sum_{m,n=1}^{N}\omega_{t}^{m,n}}\sum_{m,n=1}^{N}\omega_{t}^{m,n}\varphi_{t+1}(\overleftarrow{X}_{t+1}^{m},X_{t}^{n})$$

with
$$\omega_t^{m,n} = W_t^n \overleftarrow{W}_t^m / \gamma_t (\overleftarrow{X}_t^m)$$
, and

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^n \delta_{X_t^n}(dx_t) \approx \mathbb{P}_t(\mathrm{d} x_t | y_{0:t}), \quad \text{forward filter,}$$

 $\sum_{m=1}^{N} \overleftarrow{W}_{t+1}^{m} \delta_{\overleftarrow{X}_{t+1}^{m}}(dx_{t+1}) \approx \gamma_{t+1|T}(\mathrm{d}x_{t+1}), \text{ backward information filter.}$

Complexity

Cost to compute previous estimate is in general $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$. There exists a recent method to obtain a $\mathcal{O}(N)$ complexity.

Section 5

Conclusion

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particle smoothing

Practical recommendations

• Off-line, known transition density: FFBS-MCMC

Practical recommendations

- Off-line, known transition density: FFBS-MCMC
- Off-line, unknown transition density: see Dau & C (2023) for a coupling approach.

Practical recommendations

- Off-line, known transition density: FFBS-MCMC
- Off-line, unknown transition density: see Dau & C (2023) for a coupling approach.
- On-line, additive functions: the $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ algorithm (expensive).

References

• Dau, H.-D., and Chopin, N. (2023) On backward smoothing algorithms, Annals of Statistics.

Maximum likelihood estimation

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Section 1

Main ideas

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Maximum likelihood estimation

Maximum likelihood estimation

Now, the considered state-space model depends on some unknown parameter θ ; dependence on θ is made explicit in the notations.

We'd like to compute:

$$\widehat{\theta}_{\mathcal{T}} \in \arg \max_{\theta \in \Theta} p_{\mathcal{T}}^{\theta}(y_{0:\mathcal{T}}).$$

Specific difficulties

- Asymptotic theory (for state-space models) is very technical, and relies on strong assumptions.
- The likelihood function is typically not well-behaved.
- The likelihood function (and related quantities) are not tractable.

Main ideas

Gradient-free optimisation Gradient-based approaches The EM algorithm Conclusion

Log-likelihood plot

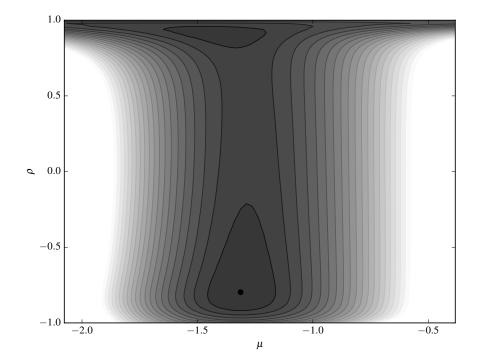


Figure 1: log-likelihood function of a stochastic volatility model for real-data ($\sigma = 0.178$).

Main approaches

- Gradient-free optimisation (Nelder-Mead);
- Gradient-based optimisation (gradient descent);
- the EM algorithm.

Section 2

Gradient-free optimisation

Likelihood estimate

Recall that, in a guided filter

$$L_T^N = \prod_{t=0}^T \left(\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N w_t^n \right)$$

is an estimate of the density of $Y_{0:T}$ (i.e. the likelihood).

In fact, this estimate is unbiased, and its variance grows with time.

Error grows with time

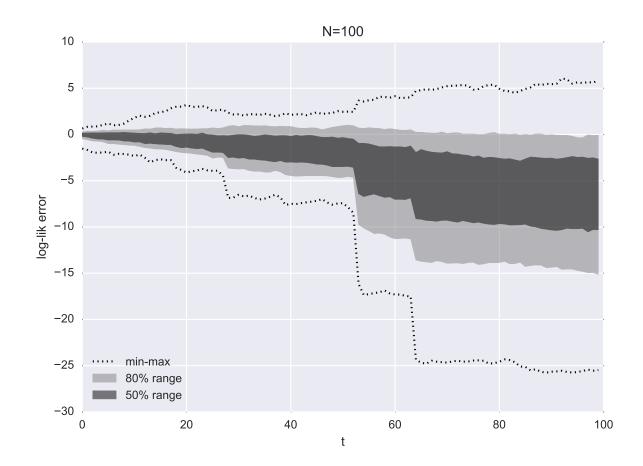


Figure 2: log-likelihood error versus time (bootstrap filter, N = 100, linear Gaussian model)

Common random numbers

A nice trick when dealing with noisy optimisation is to "freeze" the random numbers for all the evaluations of the noisy target.

Unfortunately, the CRN trick is not very useful in our context: even with frozen random numbers, a particle estimate is a discontinuous function of θ . (Discuss.)

Hürzeler and Künsch

The CRN would apply nicely to a likelihood estimate based on the following identity:

$$\frac{p_T^{\theta}(y_{0:T})}{p_T^{\theta_0}(y_{0:T})} = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_T^{\theta_0}} \left[\frac{p_T^{\theta}(X_{0:T}, y_{0:T})}{p_T^{\theta_0}(X_{0:T}, y_{0:T})} \middle| Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T} \right]$$
(1)

where

$$p_T^{\theta}(x_{0:T}, y_{0:T}) = p_0^{\theta}(x_0) \prod_{t=1}^T p_t^{\theta}(x_t | x_{t-1}) \prod_{t=0}^t f_t^{\theta}(y_t | x_t).$$

but note that we are then dealing with a curse of dimensionality...

Applying H&K to a stochastic volatility model

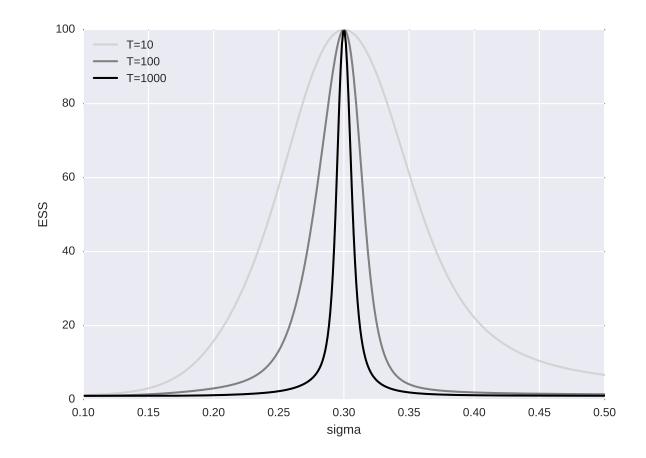


Figure 3: ESS as a function of σ , for the IS estimate of the previous slide

Practical recipe

- Brute force approach: take *N* large enough so that the noise of likelihood estimates become negligible. Then apply the simplex (Nelder-mead) algorithm.
- As always, the algorithm may converge to a local mode, depending on the starting point.
- Seems to work reasonably well when $dim(\theta)$ is not too large.

Section 3

Gradient-based approaches

Gradient descent

Gradient *ascent* maximises a function *h* by iterating:

$$\theta_n = \theta_{n-1} + \gamma_n \nabla h(\theta_{n-1})$$

In our case, recall that we may express the gradient of the log-likelihood as a smoothing expectation (see previous chapter).

Section 4

The EM algorithm

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Maximum likelihood estimation

The EM algorithm

For any model on a pair (X, Y) such that we observe only Y, the EM algorithm iterates:

$$\theta_n = \arg \max_{\theta \in \Theta} \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_{\theta_{n-1}}} \left[\log p^{\theta}(X, y) | Y = y \right]$$

where $p^{\theta}(x, y)$ is the joint density of (X, Y) (for parameter θ).

EM algorithm for exponential families

If the joint density belongs to a natural exponential family:

$$\rho^{\theta}(x,y) = \exp\{\theta^{T}s(x,y) - \psi(\theta) - \xi(x)\}$$

the EM update takes the following (simpler) form:

$$\nabla \psi(\theta) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}^{\theta_{n-1}}} \left[s(X, y) \mid Y = y \right] .$$
(2)

EM algorithm for state-space models

There, $X = X_{0:T}$, $Y = Y_{0:T}$, and, assuming again an exponential family for the joint, the EM update amounts to computing a smoothing expectation:

$$\theta_n = (\nabla \psi)^{-1} \left(\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}^{\theta_{n-1}}} \left[s(X_{0:T}, y_{0:T}) \mid Y_{0:T} = y_{0:T} \right] \right)$$

Section 5

Conclusion

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Maximum likelihood estimation

Conclusion

- no clear winner;
- most approaches rely on computing smoothing estimates; this implies in particular that kernel $P_t^{\theta}(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ admits a tractable density $p_t^{\theta}(x_t|x_{t-1})$.
- Maximum likelihood estimation may not be the best way to assess parameter uncertainty in the context of state-space models.

Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

 \mathcal{A}

Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

 \mathcal{A}

Outline







4 Conditional SMC (Particle Gibbs)

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

↓↓↓<</p>

- E

Tractable models

For a standard Bayesian model, defined by (a) prior $p(\theta)$, and (b) likelihood $p(y|\theta)$, a standard approach is to use the Metropolis-Hastings algorithm to sample from the posterior

 $\pi(\theta) \propto p(\theta)p(y|\theta).$

Metropolis-Hastings (Gaussian random walk proposal)

From current point θ_m

- Sample $\theta_{\star} \sim N(\theta_m, \Sigma)$
- 2 With probability $1 \wedge r$, take $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_{\star}$, otherwise $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_m$, where

$$r = \frac{p(\theta_{\star})p(y|\theta_{\star})}{p(\theta_m)p(y|\theta_m)}$$

This generates a Markov chain which leaves $p(\theta|y)$ invariant.

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Intractable models

This generic approach cannot be applied in the following situations:

- **1** The likelihood is $p(y|\theta) = h_{\theta}(y)/Z(\theta)$, where $Z(\theta)$ is an intractable normalising constant; e.g. log-linear models, network models, Ising models.
- 2 The likelihood $p(y|\theta)$ is an intractable integral

$$p(y|\theta) = \int_{\mathcal{X}} p(y, x|\theta) \, dx.$$

The likelihood is even more complicated, because it corresponds to some scientific model involving some complicate generative process (scientific models, "likelihood-free inference", ABC).

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●







4 Conditional SMC (Particle Gibbs)

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

↓↓↓<</p>

- E

General framework

Consider posterior

 $\pi(\theta, x) \propto p(\theta)p(x|\theta)p(y|x, \theta)$

where typically x is of much larger dimension than θ . One potential approach to sample from the posterior is **Gibbs sampling**: iteratively sample $\theta|x, y$, then $x|\theta, y$. However, there are many cases where Gibbs is either difficult to implement, or quite inefficient.

Instead, we would like to sample marginally from

$$\pi(\theta) \propto p(\theta)p(y|\theta), \quad p(y|\theta) = \int_{\mathcal{X}} p(x, y|\theta) \, dx$$

but again $p(y|\theta)$ is intractable...

Importance sampling

I cannot compute $p(y|\theta)$, but I can compute an **unbiased** estimator of this quantity:

$$\hat{p}(y|\theta) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{p(x^n|\theta)p(y|x^n,\theta)}{q(x^n)}, \quad x^{1:N} \stackrel{iid}{\sim} q(x)$$

using importance sampling.

The pseudo-marginal approach

GIMH (Beaumont, 2003)

From current point θ_m

- Sample $\theta_{\star} \sim N(\theta_m, \Sigma)$
- **2** With prob. $1 \wedge r$, take $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_{\star}$, otherwise $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_m$, with

$$r = rac{p(heta_{\star})\hat{p}(y| heta_{\star})}{p(heta_m)\hat{p}(y| heta_m)}$$

Note that $\hat{p}(y|\theta_{\star})$ is based on independent samples generated at iteration m. Question: Is GIMH a **non-standard** HM sampler w.r.t. **standard** target $\pi(\theta)$?

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Validity of GIMH

Property 1

The following function

$$\bar{\pi}(\theta, x^{1:N}) = \prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x^n) \frac{p(\theta)\hat{p}(y|\theta)}{p(y)}$$

is a joint PDF, whose θ -marginal is $\pi(\theta) \propto p(\theta)p(y|\theta)$.

Proof: Direct consequence of unbiasedness; fix θ then

$$\int \prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x^{n}) p(\theta) \hat{p}(y|\theta) \, dx^{1:N} = p(\theta) \mathbb{E} \left[\hat{p}(y|\theta) \right] = p(\theta) p(y|\theta)$$

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

GIMH as a Metropolis sampler

Property 2

GIMH is a Metropolis sampler with respect to joint distribution $\bar{\pi}(\theta, x^{1:N})$. The proposal density is $N(\theta_{\star}; \theta_m, \Sigma) \prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x_{\star}^n)$.

Proof: current point is $(\theta_m, x_m^{1:N})$, proposed point is $(\theta_{\star}, x_{\star}^{1:N})$ and HM ratio is

$$r = \frac{\prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x_{\star}^{n}) p(\theta_{\star}) \hat{p}(y|\theta_{\star}) \prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x_{m}^{n})}{\prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x_{m}^{n}) p(\theta_{m}) \hat{p}(y|\theta_{m}) \prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x_{\star}^{n})}$$

Thus, GIMH is a **standard** Metropolis sampler w.r.t. **non-standard** (extended) target $\bar{\pi}(\theta, x^{1:N})$.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ ● 三 ● のへで

There is more to life than this

Property 3

Extend $\bar{\pi}(\theta, x^{1:N})$ with $k|\theta, x^{1:N} \propto \pi(\theta, x^k)/q(x^k)$, then,

- the marginal dist. of (θ, x^k) is $\pi(\theta, x)$.
- Conditional on (θ, x^k) , $x_n \sim q$ for $n \neq k$, independently.

Proof: let

$$\bar{\pi}(\theta, x^{1:N}, k) = \left\{\prod_{n=1}^{N} q(x^n)\right\} \frac{\pi(\theta, x^k)}{q(x^k)} = \left\{\prod_{n \neq k} q(x^n)\right\} \pi(\theta, x^k)$$

then clearly the sum w.r.t. k gives $\overline{\pi}(\theta, x^{1:N})$, while the above properties hold.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

We can do Gibbs!

One consequence of Property 3 is that we gain the ability to perform **Gibbs**, in order to regenerate the N - 1 non-selected points x^n , $n \neq k$. More precisely:

- Sample $k \sim \pi(k|\theta, x^{1:N}) \propto \pi(\theta, x^k)/q(x^k)$
- 2 regenerate $x^n \sim q$, for all $n \neq k$.

Could be useful for instance to avoid "getting stuck", because say the current value $\hat{\pi}(\theta)$ is too high.

Main lessons

- We can replace an intractable quantity by an unbiased estimate, without introducing any approximation.
- In fact, we can do more: with Proposition 3, we have obtained that
 - it is possible to sample from $\pi(\theta, x)$ jointly;
 - 2 it is possible to do a Gibbs step where the $N 1 \times^n$, $n \neq k$ are regenerated (useful when GIMH "get stucks"?)
- but careful, it is possible to get it wrong...

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Unbiasedness without an auxiliary variable representation

This time, consider instead a target $\pi(\theta)$ (no x), involving an intractable *denominator*; an important application is Bayesian inference on likelihoods with intractable normalising constants:

$$\pi(heta) \propto p(heta) p(y| heta) = p(heta) rac{h_{ heta}(y)}{Z(heta)}$$

Liang & Lin (2010)'s sampler

From current point θ_m

1 Sample
$$\theta_{\star} \sim H(\theta^m, \mathrm{d}\theta_{\star})$$

2 With prob. $1 \wedge r$, take $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_{\star}$, otherwise $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_m$, with

$$r = \left(\frac{\widehat{Z(\theta_m)}}{Z(\theta_{\star})}\right) \frac{p(\theta_{\star})h_{\theta_{\star}}(y)h(\theta^m|\theta_{\star})}{p(\theta_m)h_{\theta_m}(y)h(\theta_{\star}|\theta^m)}.$$

Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

Outline







4 Conditional SMC (Particle Gibbs)

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

↓↓↓<</p>

÷.

PMCMC: introduction

PMCMC (Andrieu et al., 2010) is akin to GIMH, except a more complex proposal mechanism is used: a PF (particle filter). The same remarks will apply:

- Unbiasedness (of the likelihood estimated provided by the PF) is only an intermediate result for establishing the validity of the whole approach.
- Unbiasedness is not enough to give you intuition on the validity of e.g. Particle Gibbs.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ■

Objective

Objectives

Sample from

 $p(\mathrm{d}\theta,\mathrm{d}x_{0:T}|y_{0:T})$

for a given state-space model.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Why are these models difficult?

Because the likelihood is intractable

$$p_T^{\theta}(y_{0:T}) = \int \prod_{t=0}^T f_t^{\theta}(y_t|x_t) \prod_{t=1}^T p_t^{\theta}(x_t|x_{t-1}) p_0^{\theta}(x_0)$$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ ● ○ ○ ○ ○ ○

Feynman-Kac formalism

Taking $\{M_t^{\theta}, G_t^{\theta}\}_{t\geq 0}$ so that

• $M_t^{\theta}(x_{t-1}, dx_t)$ is a Markov kernel (for fixed θ), with density $m_t^{\theta}(x_t|x_{t-1})$

and

$$G_t^{\theta}(x_{t-1}, x_t) = \frac{f_t^{\theta}(y_t | x_t) p_t^{\theta}(x_t | x_{t-1})}{m_t^{\theta}(x_t | x_{t-1})}$$

we obtain the Feynman-Kac representation associated to a guided PF that approximates the filtering distribution at every time t.

If we take $m_t^{\theta}(x_t|x_{t-1}) = p_t^{\theta}(x_t|x_{t-1})$, we recover the bootstrap filter (which does not require to be able to evaluate $p_t^{\theta}(x_t|x_{t-1})$ pointwise).

Particle filters: pseudo-code

All operations to be performed for all $n \in 1 : N$. At time 0:

(a) Generate
$$X_0^n \sim M_0^{\theta}(dx_0)$$
.
(b) Compute $w_0^n = G_0^{\theta}(X_0^n)$, $W_0^n = w_0^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_0^m$, and $L_0^N = N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^N w_0^n$.

Recursively, for $t = 1, \ldots, T$:

- (a) Generate ancestor variables $A_t^n \in 1$: N independently from $\mathcal{M}(W_{t-1}^{1:N})$.
- (b) Generate $X_t^n \sim M_t^{\theta}(X_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$.

c) Compute
$$w_t^n = G_t^{\theta}(x_{t-1}, x_t)$$
, $W_t^n = w_t^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_t^m$,
and $L_t^N(\theta) = L_{t-1}^N(\theta) \times \{N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^N w_t^n\}$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Unbiased likelihood estimator

A by-product of PF output is that

$$L_T^N(\theta) = \left(\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^N G_0^\theta(X_0^n)\right)\prod_{t=1}^T \left(\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^N G_t^\theta(x_{t-1}, x_t)\right)$$

is an **unbiased** estimator of the likelihood $L_T(\theta) = p(y_{0:T}|\theta)$.

(Not trivial, see e.g Proposition 7.4.1 in Pierre Del Moral's book.)

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ 三 少久?

PMCMC

Breakthrough paper of Andrieu et al. (2011), based on the unbiasedness of the PF estimate of the likelihood.

Marginal PMCMC

From current point θ_m (and current PF estimate $L_T^N(\theta_m)$):

1 Sample
$$heta_{\star} \sim H(heta_m, \mathrm{d} heta_{\star})$$

- 2 Run a PF so as to obtain $L_T^N(\theta_*)$, an unbiased estimate of $L_T(\theta_*) = p(y_{0:T}|\theta_*)$.
- 3 With probability $1 \wedge r$, set $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_{\star}$, otherwise $\theta_{m+1} = \theta_m$ with

$$r = \frac{p(\theta_{\star})L_T^N(\theta_{\star})h(\theta_m|\theta_{\star})}{p(\theta_m)L_T^N(\theta_m)h(\theta_{\star}|\theta_m)}$$

<ロ > < 同 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Validity

Property 1

Let $\psi_{\mathcal{T},\theta}(dx_{0:\mathcal{T}}^{1:N}, da_{1:\mathcal{T}}^{1:N})$ be the joint dist' of all the the rv's generated by a PF (for fixed θ), then

$$\pi_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathrm{d}\theta,\mathrm{d}x_{0:T}^{1:N},\mathrm{d}a_{1:T}^{1:N}) = \frac{p(\mathrm{d}\theta)}{p(y_{0:T})}\psi_{\mathcal{T},\theta}(\mathrm{d}x_{0:T}^{1:N},\mathrm{d}a_{1:T}^{1:N})L_{T}^{N}(\theta)$$

is a joint pdf, such that the θ -marginal is $p(\theta|y_{0:T})d\theta$.

Proof: fix θ , and integrate wrt the other variables:

$$\int \pi_{T}(\cdot) = \frac{p(\theta)}{p(y_{0:T})} \mathbb{E} \left[L_{T}^{N}(\theta) \right] d\theta$$
$$= \frac{p(\theta)p(y_{0:T}|\theta)}{p(y_{0:T})} d\theta = p(\theta|y_{0:T}) d\theta$$

More direct proof for T = 1

$$\psi_{1,\theta}(\mathrm{d} x_{0:1}^{1:N},\mathrm{d} a_1^{1:N}) = \prod_{n=1}^N M_0^{\theta}(\mathrm{d} x_0^n) \left\{ \prod_{n=1}^N M_1^{\theta}(x_0^{a_1^n},\mathrm{d} x_1^n) W_{0,\theta}^{a_1^n} \mathrm{d} a_1^n \right\}$$

with $W_{0,\theta}^n = G_0^{\theta}(x_0^n) / \sum_{m=1}^N G_0^{\theta}(x_0^m)$. So

$$\pi_1(\cdot) = \frac{p(\theta)}{p(y_{0:t})} \psi_{1,\theta}(\cdot) \left\{ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N G_0^{\theta}(x_0^n) \right\} \left\{ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N G_1^{\theta}(x_0^{a_1^n}, x_1^n) \right\}$$

$$= \frac{p(\theta)}{N^2 p(y_{0:t})} \sum_{n=1}^{N} G_1^{\theta}(x_0^{a_1^n}, x_1^n) M_1^{\theta}(x_0^{a_1^n}, x_1^n) \frac{G_0^{\theta}(x_0^{a_1^n})}{\sum_{m=1}^{N} G_0^{\theta}(x_0^m)} \begin{cases} \sum_{m=1}^{N} G_0^{\theta}(x_0^m) \\ \sum_{m=1}^{N} G_0^{\theta}(x_0^m) \end{cases} \\ \times M_0^{\theta}(\mathrm{d}x_0^{a_1^n}) \left\{ \prod_{i \neq a_1^n} M_0^{\theta}(\mathrm{d}x_0^i) \right\} \left\{ \prod_{i \neq n} M_1^{\theta}(x_0^{a_1^i}, \mathrm{d}x_1^i) W_1^{a_1^i} \mathrm{d}a_1^i \right\}$$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

Interpretation

$$\pi_{1}(\mathrm{d}\theta, \mathrm{d}x_{0:1}^{1:N}, \mathrm{d}a_{1}^{1:N}) = \frac{1}{N} \times \left[\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} p(\mathrm{d}\theta, \mathrm{d}x_{0}^{a_{1}^{n}}, \mathrm{d}x_{1}^{n}|y_{0:1})\right]$$
$$\prod_{i \neq a_{1}^{n}} M_{0}^{\theta}(\mathrm{d}x_{0}^{i}) \left\{\prod_{i \neq n} M_{1}^{\theta}(x_{0}^{a_{1}^{i}}, \mathrm{d}x_{1}^{i}) W_{0}^{a_{1}^{i}}\right\}$$

which is a mixture distribution, with probability 1/N that path n follows $p(d\theta, dx_{0:1}|y_{0:1})$, A_1^n is Uniform in 1 : N, and other paths follows a conditional SMC distribution (the distribution of a particle filter conditional on one trajectory being fixed). From this calculation, one easily deduce the unbiasedness property (directly!) but also properties similar to those of the GIMH.

 $\checkmark \land \land \land$

Additional properties (similar to GIMH)

Property 2

Marginal PMCMC is a Metropolis sampler with invariant distribution π_T , and proposal distribution $h(\theta_*|\theta)d\theta_*\psi_{T,\theta_*}(\cdot)$. (In particular, it leaves invariant the posterior $p(d\theta|y_{0:T})$.)

Proof: write the MH ratio, same type of cancellations as for GIMH.

▲□▶▲□▶▲≡▶▲≡▶ ■ ∽000

Additional properties (similar to GIMH)

Property 3

If we extend π_T by adding component $k \in 1 : N$ with conditional probability $\propto W_T^k$, then the joint pdf $\pi_T(d\theta, dx_{0:T}^{1:N}, da_{1:T-1}^{1:N}, dk)$ is such that

where $X_{0:T}^{\star}$ is the k-th **complete** trajectory: $X_t^{\star} = X_t^{B_t}$ for all t, with $B_T = k$, $B_{T-1} = A_T^k$, ... $B_0 = A_1^{B_1}$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Outline









nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > □ = □

 $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{Q}$

CSMC

- The formalisation of PMCMC offers the possibility to regenerate the N 1 trajectories that have not been selected; this is essentially a Gibbs step, conditional on θ , and the selected trajectory $X_{0:T}^*$.
- This CSMC step cannot be analysed with the same tools as marginal PMCMC, as in Andrieu and Vihola (2012).

From now on, we drop θ from the notations.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ■

Algorithmic description (T = 1)

Assume selected trajectory is $X_{0:1}^{\star} = (X_0^1, X_1^1)$; i.e. k = 1, $A_1^k = 1$. At time t = 0:

(a) sample X₀ⁿ ~ M₀(dx₀) for n ∈ 2 : N.
(b) Compute weights w₀ⁿ = G₀(X₀ⁿ) and normalise, W₀ⁿ = w₀ⁿ / ∑_{m=1}^N w₀^m.

At time t = 1:

(a) Sample
$$A_1^{2:N} \mathcal{M}(W_0^{1:N})$$
.
(b) Sample $X_1^n \sim M_1(X_1^{A_0^n}, dx_1)$ for $n \in 2: N$.
(c) Compute weights $w_1^n = G_1(X_0^{A_1^n}, X_1^n)$ and normalise,
 $W_1^n = w_1^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_1^m$.
(d) select new trajectory k with probability W_1^k .
then return $\tilde{X}_{0:1}^{\star} = (X_0^{A_1^k}, X_1^k)$.

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Some remarks

- One may show that the CSMC update does not depend on the labels of the frozen trajectory. This is why we set these arbitrarily to (1,...,1). Formally, this means that the CSMC kernel is such that K^N_{CSMC} : X^T → P(X^T).
- This remains true for other resampling schemes (than multinomial); see next two* slides for an example

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr Particles as auxiliary variables: PMCMC and related algorithms

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Properties of the CSMC kernel

Theorem

Under appropriate conditions, one has, for any $\varepsilon > 0$,

$$\left| \mathcal{K}_{\mathrm{CSMC}}^{\mathcal{N}}(\varphi)(x_{0:\mathcal{T}}) - \mathcal{K}_{\mathrm{CSMC}}^{\mathcal{N}}(\varphi)(x_{0:\mathcal{T}}') \right| \leq \varepsilon$$

for N large enough, and $\varphi : \mathcal{X}^T \to [-1, 1]$.

This implies uniform ergodicity. Proof based on a coupling construction.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□ ● のへで

Assumptions

- G_t is upper bounded, $G_t(x_t) \leq g_t$.
- We have

$$\int M_0(dx_0) G_0(x_0) \geq \frac{1}{g_0}, \quad \int M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t) G_t(x_t) \geq \frac{1}{g_t}$$

But no assumptions on the kernels M_t .

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ◆ ○ ◇ ◇ ◇

Backward sampling

Nick Whiteley (in his RSS discussion of PMCMC) suggested to add an extra **backward** step to CSMC, where one tries to modify (recursively, backward in time) the ancestry of the selected trajectory.

In our T = 1 example, and for multinomial resampling, this amounts to draw A_1^k from

$$\mathbb{P}(A_1^k = a | k, x_{0:1}^{1:N}) \propto W_0^a m_1(x_1^k | x_0^a)$$

where $m_1(x_1^k|x_0^a)$ is the PDF at point x_1^k of $M_1(x_0^a, dx_1)$, then return $x_{0:1}^{\star} = (x_0^a, x_1^k)$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

BS for other resampling schemes

More generally, BS amounts to draw a_1^k from

$$P(a_1^k = a | k, x_{1:2}^{1:N}) \propto \rho_1(W_1^{1:N}; a_1^k = a | a_1^{-k}) m_2(x_1^a, x_2^k)$$

where a_1^{-k} is $a_1^{1:N}$ minus a_1^k .

So we need to be able the conditional probability $\rho_1(W_1^{1:N}; a_1^k = a | a_1^{-k})$ for alternative resampling schemes.

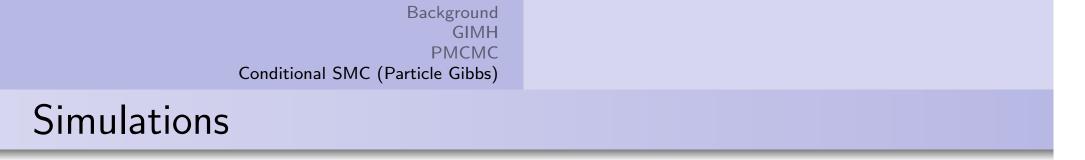
◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Why BS would bring an improvement?

C. and Singh (2014) prove that CSMC+BS dominates CSMC in efficiency ordering (i.e. asymptotic variance). To do so, they prove that these two kernels are reversible; see Tierney (1998), Mira & Geyer (1999).

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ - 三

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

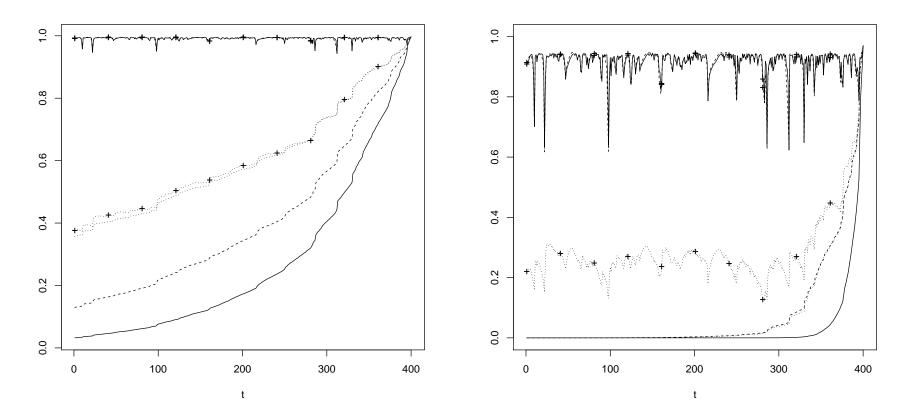


See the plots in next slide, based on the following simple state-space model, with $\theta = (\mu, \phi, \sigma)$:

$$egin{aligned} x_t - \mu &= \phi(x_{t-1} - \mu) + \sigma \epsilon_t, \quad \epsilon_t \sim N(0, 1) \ y_t | x_t \sim ext{Poisson}(e^{x_t}) \end{aligned}$$

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ◆ ○ ◇ ◇ ◇

Update rate of X_t



Left: N = 200, right: N = 20. Solid line: multinomial, Dashed line: residual; Dotted line: Systematic. Crosses mean BS has been used.

< □ ▶ < □ ▶ < 三 ▶

3

- ∃ →

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Conclusion

- When the backward step is possible, it should be implemented, because it improves mixing dramatically. In that case, multinomial resampling is good enough.
- When the backward step cannot be implemented, switching to systematic resampling helps.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

But what's the point of PG?

It's a bit the same discussion as marginal Metropolis (in θ -space) versus Gibbs:

- Gibbs does not work so well when they are strong correlations (here between θ and $X_{0;T}^{\star}$);
- Metropolis requires a good proposal to work well.

In some cases, combining the two is helpful: in this way, the CSMC update will refresh the particle system, which may help to get "unstuck".

▲□▶▲□▶▲≡▶▲≡▶ ■ ∽000

PMCMC: Practical calibration

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr PMCMC: Practical calibration

Section 1

Toy example

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr PMCMC: Practical calibration

Example

• $X_0 \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma_X^2)$, and

$$\begin{aligned} X_t &= \rho X_{t-1} + U_t, \quad U_t \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma_X^2) \\ Y_t &= X_t + V_t, \quad V_t \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma_Y^2), \end{aligned}$$

- Prior for $\theta = (\rho, \sigma_X^2, \sigma_Y^2)$: $\rho \sim \mathcal{U}([-1, 1]), \sigma_X^2, \sigma_Y^2 \sim \mathcal{IG}(2, 2).$
- Data simulated from the model: T + 1 = 100, $\rho = 0.9$, $\sigma_X = 1$, $\sigma_Y = 0.2$.

Considered algorithms

- Gaussian random walk PMMH (for various values of N); covariance of proposal is τI_3 , for various values of τ .
- "ideal" random walk Metropolis (i.e. true likelihood is computed using Kalman), with same proposal.

MSJD (mean squared jumping distance) vs acceptance rate

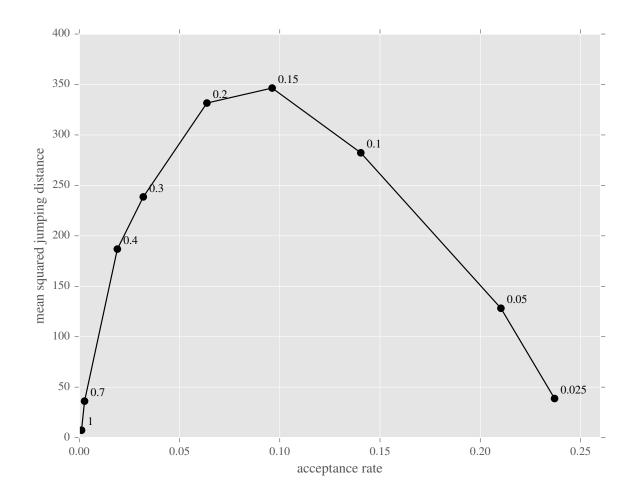


Figure 1: Mean squared jumping distance versus acceptance rate, for PMMH with N = 100, and different random walk scales τ ; the value of τ is printed next to each dot.

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

PMCMC: Practical calibration

Acceptance rate vs N

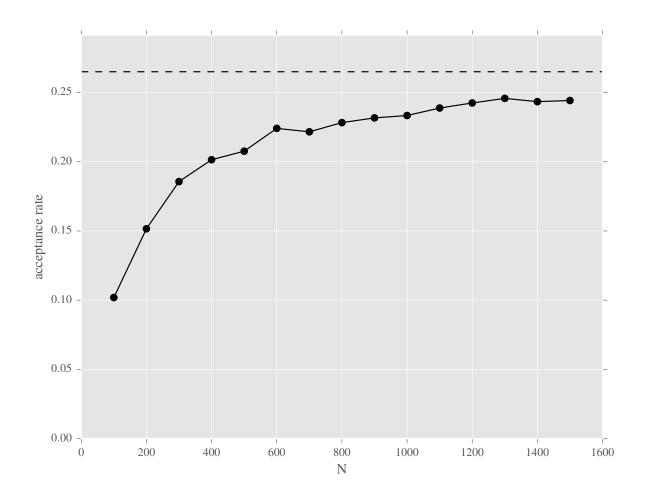


Figure 2: Acceptance rate versus N, for the random walk PMMH algorithm; dashed line gives the acceptance rate of the ideal sampler.

ACFs

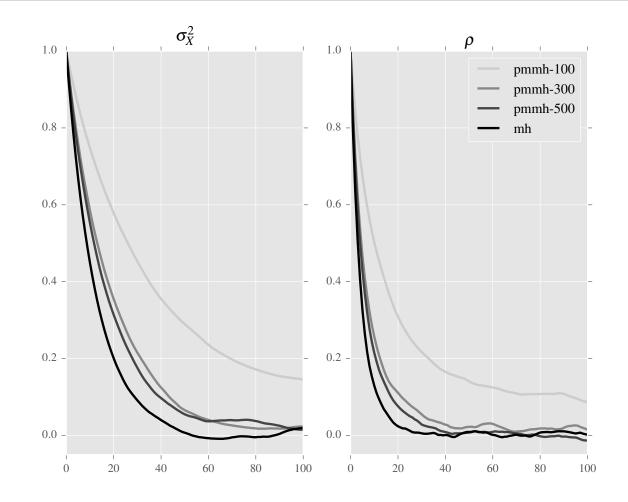


Figure 3: ACFs (auto-correlation function) of two components of θ of the ideal sampler and selected PMMH samplers (based on the bootstrap filter for N = 100, 300, 500), in the linear Gaussian tov example.

MSJD vs log-likelihood variance

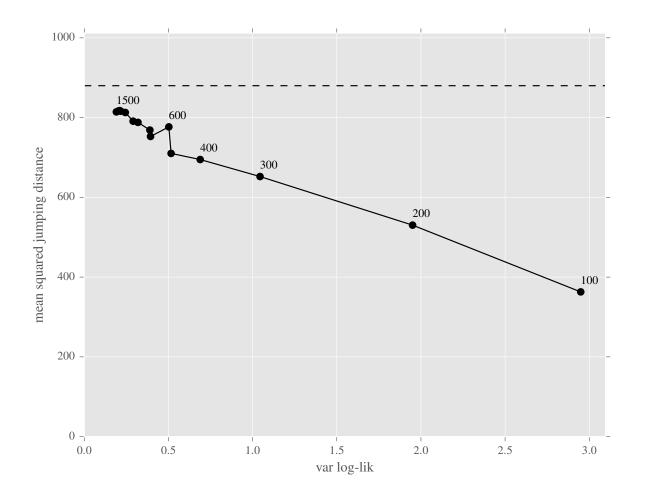


Figure 4: Mean squared jumping distance versus log-likelihood variance, for the PMMH algorithm (N = 100, ..., 1000). The latter quantity is in fact the average (over 10 values of θ sampled from the posterior by the nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr PMCMC: Practical calibration

Change prior to $\sigma_Y^2 \sim G(1/2, 1/2)$

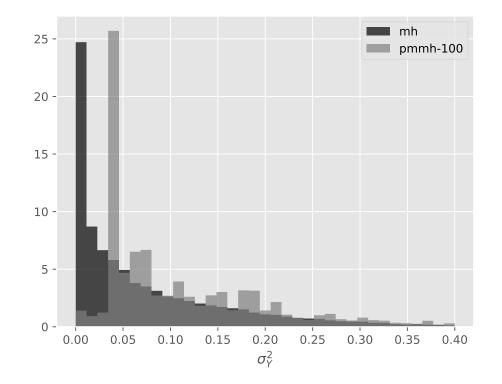


Figure 5: Marginal posterior distribution of σ_Y^2 , as estimated by the ideal sampler (black), and PMMH with N = 100 (grey), for the alternative prior.

Section 2

Theta-logistic model in Ecology

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr PMCMC: Practical calibration

The model

• $X_0 \sim N(0,1)$ (for simplicity) and

$$\begin{aligned} X_t &= X_{t-1} + \tau_0 - \tau_1 \exp(\tau_2 X_{t-1}) + U_t, & U_t \sim N(0, \sigma_X^2) \\ Y_t &= X_t + V_t, & V_t \sim N(0, \sigma_Y^2) \end{aligned}$$

- Prior for $\theta = (\tau_0, \tau_1, \tau_2, \sigma_X^2, \sigma_Y^2)$: $\tau_i \sim \mathcal{N}_+(0, 1)$ (a normal distribution truncated to \mathbb{R}^+), σ_X^2 , $\sigma_Y^2 \sim IG(2, 1)$.
- Real data.

Shape of posterior

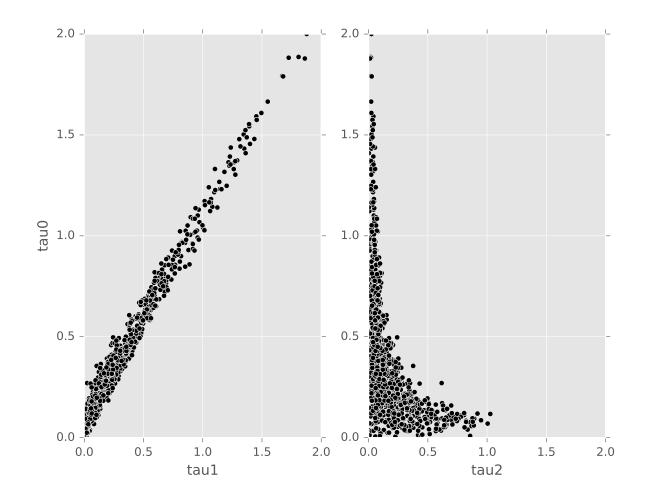


Figure 6: Selected pair plots for the output of the Particle Gibbs sampler (with backward step) in the theta-logistic example.

Results

PMMH almost impossible to calibrate for good performance here; instead we obtained good performance from Particle Gibbs.

Section 3

Conclusions

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr PMCMC: Practical calibration

If you wish to implement PMMH:

- Try to design a PF such the variance of the log-likelihood estimate is ≪ 1, for θ's that are *representative* of the posterior. For this, you may need to increase N, and/or use a better proposal (guided filter), and/or use SQMC.
- Then calibrate the random walk proposal so as to obtain e.g. a high value for the MSJD.
- Adaptive strategies may really help in this case; alternatively, consider Particle Gibbs or SMC².

(Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

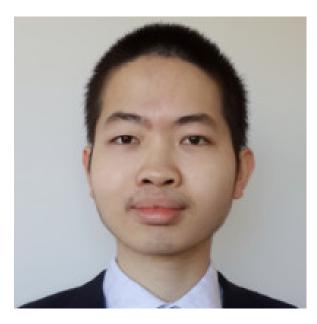
Section 1

Introduction

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Two talks in one

- Overview of SMC samplers (and how/why they may be overlooked)
- Proposed improvement: waste-free SMC, joint work with:



Hai-Dang Dau

Section 2

SMC: motivation

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

SMC: what is it?

SMC = an algorithm that mixes importance sampling and MCMC techniques so as to approximate a **sequence** of distributions.

SMC: what is it?

SMC = an algorithm that mixes importance sampling and MCMC techniques so as to approximate a **sequence** of distributions.

In some problems, you already have a sequence of distributions of interest.

SMC: what is it?

SMC = an algorithm that mixes importance sampling and MCMC techniques so as to approximate a **sequence** of distributions.

In some problems, you already have a sequence of distributions of interest.

In other problems, you may have a single distribution of interest, and you need to **design a sequence** that ends at the target. (I will give some recommendations.)

SMC: why?

- often only requirement is: being able to compute pointwise the (un-normalised) target density.
- parallelisable;
- estimates of the normalising constants;
- adaptive (see 2nd part);
- competitive (e.g. C. and Ridgway, 2017; Buchholz et al, 2020).

PAC-Bayesian learning (see Alquier, 2021)

A ML method based on a pseudo-posterior:

$$\pi(\theta) \propto \mu(\theta) \exp\{-\lambda R_n(\theta)\}$$

where $R_n(\theta)$ is the empirical risk for parameter θ . For instance, for a classification task:

$$R_n(\theta) = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{1}\{Y_i s_\theta(X_i) < 0\}$$

and s_{θ} could be e.g. $s_{\theta}(x) = \theta^T x$.

How do we choose λ ?

PAC-Bayesian learning (see Alquier, 2021)

A ML method based on a pseudo-posterior:

$$\pi(\theta) \propto \mu(\theta) \exp\{-\lambda R_n(\theta)\}$$

where $R_n(\theta)$ is the empirical risk for parameter θ . For instance, for a classification task:

$$R_n(\theta) = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{1}\{Y_i s_\theta(X_i) < 0\}$$

and s_{θ} could be e.g. $s_{\theta}(x) = \theta^T x$.

How do we choose λ ?

 \Rightarrow Consider a sequence of values $0 = \lambda_0 < \ldots < \lambda_T$, use SMC to approximate the corresponding sequence of PAC-Bayes posteriors (and do e.g. cross validation).

PAC-Bayesian learning (see Alquier, 2021)

A ML method based on a pseudo-posterior:

 $\pi(heta) \propto \mu(heta) \exp\{-\lambda R_{n}(heta)\}$

where $R_n(\theta)$ is the empirical risk for parameter θ . For instance, for a classification task:

$$R_n(\theta) = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{1}\{Y_i s_{\theta}(X_i) < 0\}$$

and s_{θ} could be e.g. $s_{\theta}(x) = \theta^T x$.

How do we choose λ ?

 \Rightarrow Consider a sequence of values $0 = \lambda_0 < \ldots < \lambda_T$, use SMC to approximate the corresponding sequence of PAC-Bayes posteriors (and do e.g. cross validation).

See also Chernozhukov and Hong (2003). Bissiri et al (2016). nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Sequential Bayesian estimation (and model choice)

Parametric model, prior $\mu(\theta)$. Data arrive sequentially: $Y_0, Y_1, ...$

Sequential Bayesian estimation (and model choice)

Parametric model, prior $\mu(\theta)$. Data arrive sequentially: $Y_0, Y_1, ...$ Consider sequence of posterior distributions:

$$\pi_t(\theta) = \frac{1}{p(y_{0:t})} \mu(\theta) p(y_{0:t}|\theta)$$

which may be used to infer θ sequentially, and also to perform **model choice**, through the marginal likelihood:

$$p(y_{0:t}) = \int \mu(\theta) p(y_{0:t}|\theta) d\theta$$

ABC (Approximate Bayesian Computation)

Model described only through a **simulator**: $y \sim p_{\theta}(y)$. ABC posterior:

$$\pi_{arepsilon}(heta, y) \propto \mu(heta) p_{ heta}(y) \mathbf{1} \left\{ d(y, y^{\star}) \leq arepsilon
ight\}$$

ABC (Approximate Bayesian Computation)

Model described only through a **simulator**: $y \sim p_{\theta}(y)$. ABC posterior:

$$\pi_{\varepsilon}(\theta, y) \propto \mu(\theta) p_{\theta}(y) \mathbf{1} \{ d(y, y^{\star}) \leq \varepsilon \}$$

Use a sequence $\varepsilon_0 > \varepsilon_1 > \ldots > \varepsilon_T$.

What if I don't have a sequence

Given a target distribution π , and a base distribution μ , one may **interpolate** between the two through tempering:

$$\pi_{\lambda}(heta) \propto \mu(heta)^{1-\lambda} \pi(heta)^{\lambda} = rac{1}{Z_{\lambda}} \mu(heta) \exp\left\{-\lambda V(heta)
ight\}$$

where $V(\theta) := -\log\{\pi(\theta)/\mu(\theta)\}.$

What if I don't have a sequence

Given a target distribution π , and a base distribution μ , one may **interpolate** between the two through tempering:

$$\pi_{\lambda}(heta) \propto \mu(heta)^{1-\lambda} \pi(heta)^{\lambda} = rac{1}{Z_{\lambda}} \mu(heta) \exp\left\{-\lambda V(heta)
ight\}$$

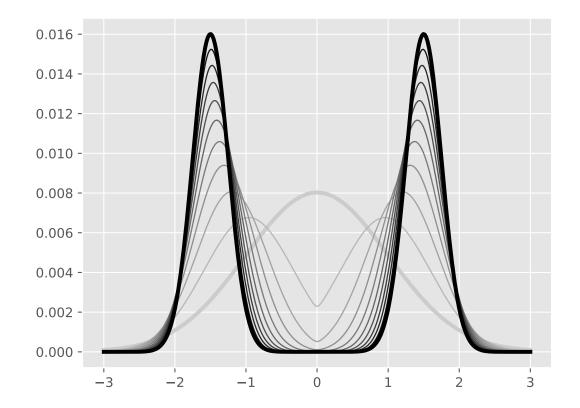
where $V(\theta) := -\log\{\pi(\theta)/\mu(\theta)\}.$

 \Rightarrow Introduce the **tempering** sequence:

$$\pi_t(\theta) = \frac{1}{Z_{\lambda_t}} \mu(\theta) \exp\{-\lambda_t V(\theta)\}$$

where $0 = \lambda_0 < \ldots, \lambda_T = 1$.

Pictorial representation



Tempering sequence interpolating between N(0, 1) and a mixture of two Gaussians.

Two critical points regarding tempering

- You can set the λ_t 's automatically. **Critical** for good performance.
- Consider two Gaussian distributions in dimension *d*. Then:
 - their χ^2 -distance is $\mathcal{O}(e^d)$.
 - however, I can design $T = O(d^{1/2})$ intermediate distributions, such that the χ^2 -distance between π_t and π_{t+1} is O(1).

Tempering lifts the curse of dimensionality; see next chapter.

Global optim

To minimise function V, consider again sequence

 $\pi_t(\theta) \propto \mu(\theta) \exp\left\{-\lambda_t V(\theta)\right\}$

where this time $\lambda_t \to +\infty$.

Global optim

To minimise function V, consider again sequence

 $\pi_t(\theta) \propto \mu(\theta) \exp\left\{-\lambda_t V(\theta)\right\}$

where this time $\lambda_t \to +\infty$.

Example: variable selection, θ is a binary vector (whether predictor is included or not), and $V(\theta)$ is e.g. BIC).

Global optim

To minimise function V, consider again sequence

 $\pi_t(\theta) \propto \mu(\theta) \exp\left\{-\lambda_t V(\theta)\right\}$

where this time $\lambda_t \to +\infty$.

Example: variable selection, θ is a binary vector (whether predictor is included or not), and $V(\theta)$ is e.g. BIC).

Connection with genetic programming.

Section 3

SMC samplers

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

SMC: more than sequential importance sampling

Now that we have a certain sequence (π_t) of distribution: we could:

- sample $\theta^n \sim \pi_0(\theta) = \mu(\theta)$ at time 0.
- move to target π_1 through importance sampling; assign to particle θ^n weight:

$$w_1^n \propto rac{\pi_1(heta^n)}{\pi_0(heta^n)}$$

• move to target π_2 through a second IS step:

$$w_2^n \propto w_1^n \frac{\pi_2(\theta^n)}{\pi_1(\theta^n)}$$

SMC: more than sequential importance sampling

Now that we have a certain sequence (π_t) of distribution: we could:

- sample $\theta^n \sim \pi_0(\theta) = \mu(\theta)$ at time 0.
- move to target π_1 through importance sampling; assign to particle θ^n weight:

$$w_1^n \propto rac{\pi_1(heta^n)}{\pi_0(heta^n)}$$

• move to target π_2 through a second IS step:

$$w_2^n \propto w_1^n \frac{\pi_2(\theta^n)}{\pi_1(\theta^n)}$$

However, this boils down to IS from π_0 to π_T . Usual weight degeneracy.

SMC: resample / move steps

At time t - 1, we have a **weighted** sample that approximates π_{t-1} :

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \varphi(\theta_{t-1}^{n}) \approx \pi_{t-1}(\varphi)$$

where $W_{t-1}^n = w_{t-1}^n / \sum_{m=1}^N w_{t-1}^m$ (normalised weights).

In order to **rejuvenate** the sample:

- resample: draw with replacement from set of *N* particles, according to the weights.
- move the resampled particles according to a MCMC kernel that leaves π_{t-1} invariant.

SMC sampler algorithm

Operations involving *n* are performed for n = 1, ..., N.

for
$$t \leftarrow 0$$
 to T do
if $t = 0$ then
 $\left\lfloor \theta_0^n \sim \pi_{-1} \right]$
else
 $\left\lfloor A_t^{1:N} \sim \operatorname{resample}(N, W_{t-1}^{1:N}) \\ \theta_t^n \sim M_t(\theta_{t-1}^{A_t^n}, d\theta_t) (M_t \text{ leaves invariant } \pi_{t-1}) \\ w_t^n \leftarrow \pi_t(\theta_t^n)/\pi_{t-1}(\theta_t^n) \\ W_t^n \leftarrow w_t^n/\sum_{m=1}^N w_t^m$

An example of a MCMC kernel: random walk Metropolis

The algorithm (with input: θ):

- Generate $\theta^{p} \sim N(\theta, \Sigma)$
- With probability $\alpha \wedge 1$, return θ^p , otherwise return θ , where

$$\alpha = \frac{\pi(\theta^p)}{\pi(\theta)}$$

defines a Markov kernel that leaves invariant π .

An example of a MCMC kernel: random walk Metropolis

The algorithm (with input: θ):

- Generate $\theta^{p} \sim N(\theta, \Sigma)$
- With probability $\alpha \wedge 1$, return θ^p , otherwise return θ , where

$$\alpha = \frac{\pi(\theta^p)}{\pi(\theta)}$$

defines a Markov kernel that leaves invariant π .

Choice of Σ critical for good performance. If $\pi \approx N(\mu, S)$, recommended to take $\Sigma = cS$, with $c = (2.38)^2/d$.

An example of a MCMC kernel: random walk Metropolis

The algorithm (with input: θ):

- Generate $\theta^{p} \sim N(\theta, \Sigma)$
- With probability $\alpha \wedge 1$, return θ^p , otherwise return θ , where

$$\alpha = \frac{\pi(\theta^p)}{\pi(\theta)}$$

defines a Markov kernel that leaves invariant π .

Choice of Σ critical for good performance. If $\pi \approx N(\mu, S)$, recommended to take $\Sigma = cS$, with $c = (2.38)^2/d$.

Many other types of MCMC (e.g. Gibbs, HMC, NUTS, etc.).

Practical implementation within a SMC sampler

A default strategy in SMC samplers is use (as the MCMC kernel that moves the particles at time t) k step of random walk Metropolis, with

$$\Sigma = c imes \widehat{\Sigma}$$

and $\widehat{\Sigma}$ is the empirical covariance matrix of the weighted particles.

Practical implementation within a SMC sampler

A default strategy in SMC samplers is use (as the MCMC kernel that moves the particles at time t) k step of random walk Metropolis, with

$$\Sigma = c \times \widehat{\Sigma}$$

and $\widehat{\Sigma}$ is the empirical covariance matrix of the weighted particles. Note how easy it is to properly tune the MCMC kernel.

Practical implementation within a SMC sampler

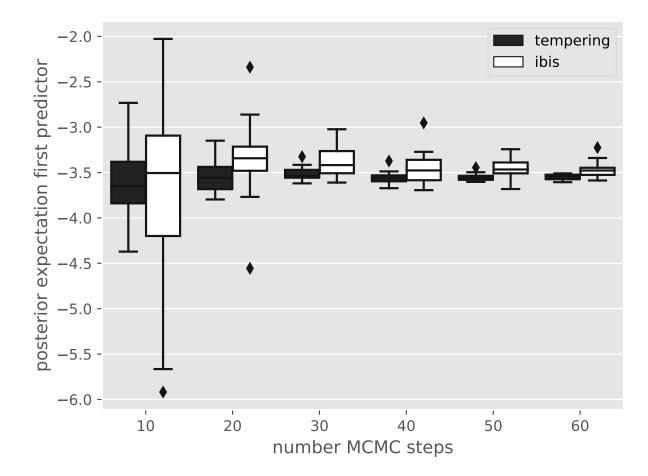
A default strategy in SMC samplers is use (as the MCMC kernel that moves the particles at time t) k step of random walk Metropolis, with

$$\Sigma = c imes \widehat{\Sigma}$$

and $\widehat{\Sigma}$ is the empirical covariance matrix of the weighted particles. Note how easy it is to properly tune the MCMC kernel. But: how to choose k?

Numerical experiment: logistic regression, sonar dataset

For details, see Chap. 16 of C. and Papaspiliopoulos (2020).



Numerical experiment (ii)

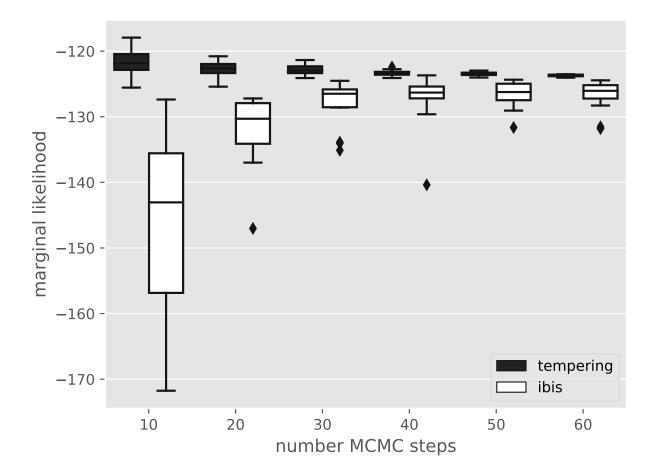
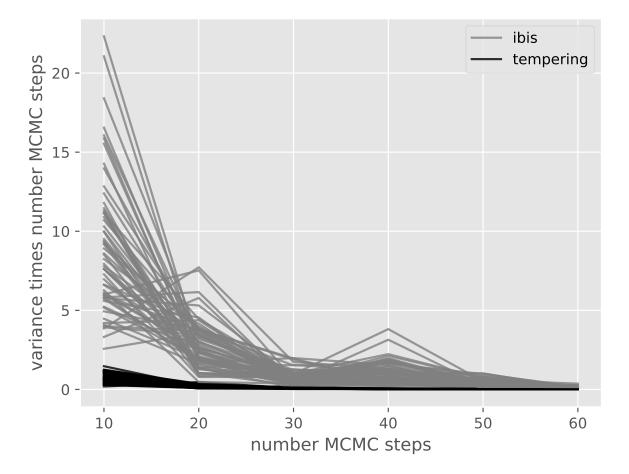


Figure 2: Same plot for log marginalising constant

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Numerical experiment (iii)



Questions / remarks

- How do we choose k in practice? (without doing many pilot runs)
- Should we have the same k at all iterations?
- If k is large, not using the intermediate states seem wasteful.

Section 4

Waste-free SMC

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Basic idea

Let M, P two integers such that N = MP.

At iteration *t*:

- resample *M* particles;
- apply P 1 MCMC steps to each of the M resampled particles;
- keep all the intermediate steps $\Rightarrow N$ particles. No waste.

Basic idea

Let M, P two integers such that N = MP.

At iteration *t*:

- resample *M* particles;
- apply P 1 MCMC steps to each of the M resampled particles;
- keep all the intermediate steps $\Rightarrow N$ particles. No waste.

Questions

- Validity?
- how to choose pair (M, P) (for a given N)?

P fixed, $M \to \infty$

In that regime, waste-free SMC is equivalent to a standard SMC sampler, where the target at time t corresponds to the distribution of a stationary Markov chain of length P.

P fixed, $M \to \infty$

In that regime, waste-free SMC is equivalent to a standard SMC sampler, where the target at time t corresponds to the distribution of a stationary Markov chain of length P.

Implies that:

- algorithm converges (as $N \to \infty$, while keeping P fixed)
- estimate of normalising constant is unbiased.

P fixed, $M \to \infty$

In that regime, waste-free SMC is equivalent to a standard SMC sampler, where the target at time t corresponds to the distribution of a stationary Markov chain of length P.

Implies that:

- algorithm converges (as $N \to \infty$, while keeping P fixed)
- estimate of normalising constant is unbiased.

However, this regime usually does not lead to best performance.

M fixed (or grows slowly), $P \to \infty$

$$\sqrt{N} \left(\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \varphi(\theta_t^n) - \pi_{t-1}(\varphi) \right) \Rightarrow \mathcal{N} \left(0, \tilde{\mathcal{V}}_t(\varphi) \right)$$
$$\sqrt{N} \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_t^n \varphi(\theta_t^n) - \pi_t(\varphi) \right) \Rightarrow \mathcal{N} \left(0, \mathcal{V}_t(\varphi) \right)$$

where

$$\begin{split} & ilde{\mathcal{V}}_t(\varphi) = \mathsf{v}_\infty(M_{t-1}, \varphi) \ & \mathcal{V}_t(\varphi) = ilde{\mathcal{V}}_t\left(ar{\mathsf{G}}_t(\varphi - \pi_t \varphi)
ight), \end{split}$$

and $v_{\infty}(M_t, \varphi)$ is the asymptotic variance of a **stationary** Markov chain (ξ_t) with kernel M_t :

$$v_{\infty}(M_t,\varphi) = \operatorname{Var}\left(\varphi(\xi_0)\right) + 2\sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \operatorname{Cov}\left(\varphi(\xi_0),\varphi(\xi_p)\right).$$

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr

(Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Asymptotic variances

Note that these asymptotic variances:

- do not depend on M;
- do not depend on previous iterations;
- suggest the following interpretation of the *N* particles: as *M* independent **stationary** chains of length *P*.

Asymptotic variances

Note that these asymptotic variances:

- do not depend on M;
- do not depend on previous iterations;
- suggest the following interpretation of the *N* particles: as *M* independent **stationary** chains of length *P*.

 \Rightarrow We can use adapt standard (initial sequence, spectral, etc.) variance estimators for MCMC chains to get a single-run estimate of the variance of our particle estimates.

Practical implications

- Take $M \ll N$.
- Take $M \ge$ the number of cores on a parallel machine.
- Single-run variance estimate based on the *M*-chain interpretation.

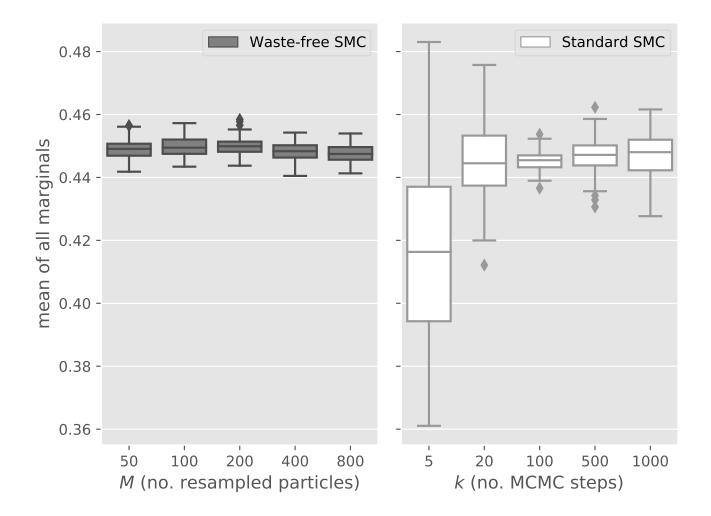
Section 5

Numerical experiments

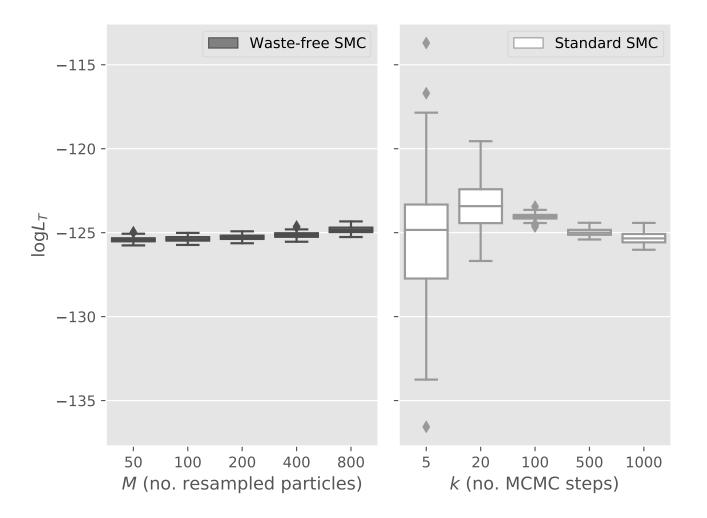
Numerical experiment I

- target: posterior of a logistic regression, sonar dataset (d = 63, challenging, see C. and Ridgway, 2017).
- sequence: tempering (automatic).
- MCMC steps: random walk Metropolis (calibrated on particles).
- independent runs of standard SMC (varying k, the number of MCMC steps), and waste-free SMC (varying M). Same number of likelihood evaluations: $N = 2 \times 10^5/k$ (standard SMC), and $N = 2 \times 10^5$ for waste-free.

Posterior expectation of the average of the components

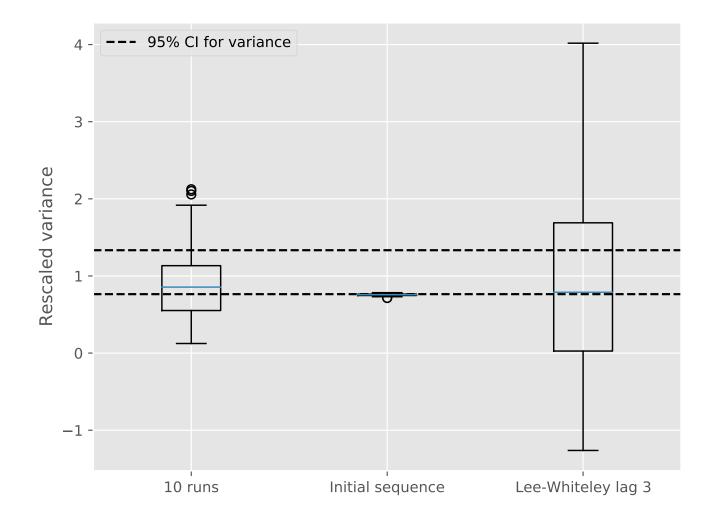


Log marginal likelihood



nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Variance estimators



Numerical experiment II

132213321

A Latin square of size 3.

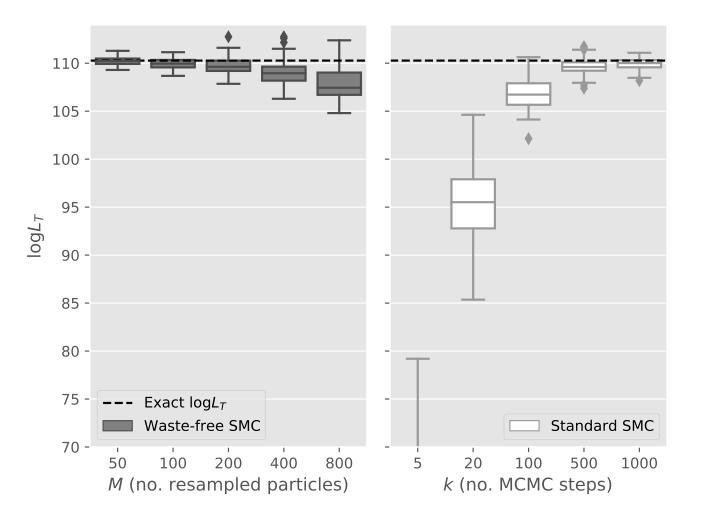
- Objective: counting the number l(d) of latin squares of size d.
- Sequence:

$$\pi_t(\theta) = \frac{1}{L_t} \mu(\theta) \exp\left\{-\lambda_t V(\theta)\right\}$$

where $V(\theta) \ge 0$, = 0 iff θ is a Latin square. As $\lambda_t \to \infty$, L_t goes to I(d).

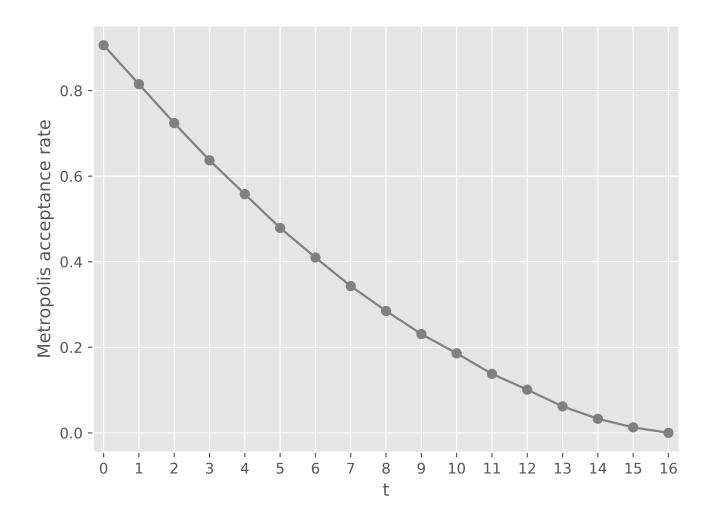
• MCMC kernels: Metropolis, swap two entries.

Results (d = 11)



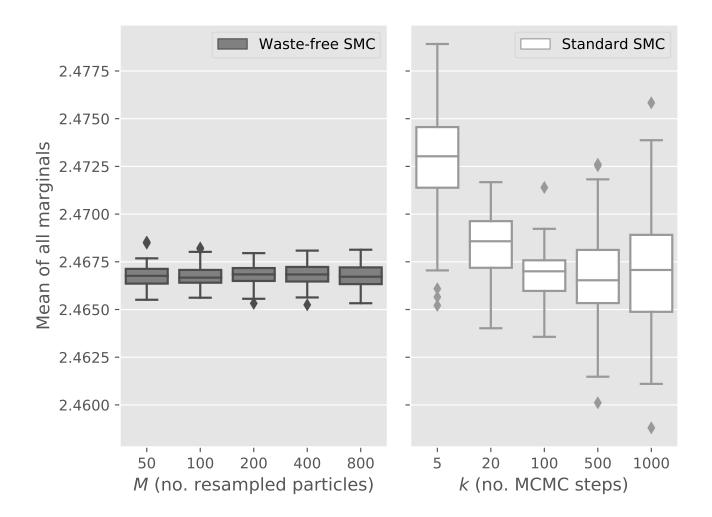
nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (Waste-free) sequential Monte Carlo samplers

Acceptance rate vs iteration



Numerical experiment III

- Objective: evaluate orthant probability P(X ≥ 0),
 X ~ N(μ, Σ) and/or sample from the corresponding truncated Gaussian dist.
- Sequence: increasing dimension.
- MCMC steps: Gibbs



Conclusion: waste-free

- Same advantages as standard SMC:
 - automatable;
 - unbiased estimate of the normalising constant;
 - parallelisable (up to *M* cores)

Conclusion: waste-free

- Same advantages as standard SMC:
 - automatable;
 - unbiased estimate of the normalising constant;
 - parallelisable (up to *M* cores)
- In addition:
 - even more automatable (no need to choose k)
 - single-run variance estimators (**not** based on genealogy)

Conclusion: waste-free

- Same advantages as standard SMC:
 - automatable;
 - unbiased estimate of the normalising constant;
 - parallelisable (up to *M* cores)
- In addition:
 - even more automatable (no need to choose k)
 - single-run variance estimators (**not** based on genealogy)

In particular, **tempering SMC** is a very good default strategy if you have a single target distribution.

Implementations

• Python: https://github.com/nchopin/particles

Implementations

- Python: https://github.com/nchopin/particles
- Blackjax

Implementations

- Python: https://github.com/nchopin/particles
- Blackjax
- STAN? (on Santa's wishlist)

Reference

Dau H.D. and C. N. (2022). Waste-free Sequential Monte Carlo, Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B: Statistical Methodology, Volume 84, Issue 1, pages 114–148, https://doi.org/10.1111/rssb.12475

Towards a better understanding of tempering SMC

(Based on joint work with Francesca Crucinio and Anna Korba)

Tempering distributions as a parametric model

Given μ and π , the tempering distributions:

$$egin{aligned} \pi_\lambda(heta) &\propto \mu(heta)^{\mathbf{1}-\lambda} \pi(heta)^\lambda \ &\propto \mu(heta) \exp\{-\lambda V(heta)\} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$V(heta) := -\log\left\{\pi(heta)/\mu(heta)
ight\}.$$

define an **(exponential) parametric model**, with parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$.

Tempering distributions as a parametric model

Given μ and π , the tempering distributions:

$$egin{aligned} \pi_\lambda(heta) &\propto \mu(heta)^{\mathbf{1}-\lambda} \pi(heta)^\lambda \ &\propto \mu(heta) \exp\{-\lambda V(heta)\} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$V(heta) := -\log\left\{\pi(heta)/\mu(heta)
ight\}.$$

define an (exponential) parametric model, with parameter $\lambda \in [0, 1]$.

The **Fisher information** of this model is $I(\lambda) := \operatorname{var}_{\lambda} [V(\theta)]$.

Proposition

For any convex, twice-differentiable function f, and $\lambda' \approx \lambda$,

$$D_f(\pi_\lambda|\pi_{\lambda'}) = rac{f''(1)I(\lambda)}{2}(\lambda'-\lambda)^2 + \mathcal{O}\left((\lambda'-\lambda)^3
ight)$$

where $D_f(\mu, \pi) := \mathbb{E}_{\mu}[f(\pi/\mu)]$ (*f*-divergence).

Proposition

For any convex, twice-differentiable function f, and $\lambda' \approx \lambda$,

$$D_f(\pi_\lambda|\pi_{\lambda'}) = rac{f''(1)I(\lambda)}{2}(\lambda'-\lambda)^2 + \mathcal{O}\left((\lambda'-\lambda)^3
ight)$$

where $D_f(\mu, \pi) := \mathbb{E}_{\mu}[f(\pi/\mu)]$ (*f*-divergence).

This applies in particular:

- to the KL divergence, $f(x) = x \log x$;
- the χ^2 -divergence, $f(x) = (x 1)^2$.

In practice, we'd like to choose 0 = $\lambda_0 < \ldots < \lambda_T = 1$ so that

$$D_f(\pi_{\lambda_{t-1}},\pi_{\lambda_t})\simeq c$$

which implies:

$$\lambda_t - \lambda_{t-1} \simeq \frac{c'}{\sqrt{l(\lambda_{t-1})}}$$

for a certain c' > 0.

• If μ and π are IID distributions with d components, then $I(\lambda) = O(d)$. \Rightarrow Length of tempering sequence is $O(d^{1/2})$.

Practical implications

- If μ and π are IID distributions with d components, then $I(\lambda) = O(d)$. \Rightarrow Length of tempering sequence is $O(d^{1/2})$.
- the sequence (λ_t) may behave in a very different ways;

Practical implications

- If μ and π are IID distributions with d components, then $I(\lambda) = O(d)$. \Rightarrow Length of tempering sequence is $O(d^{1/2})$.
- the sequence (λ_t) may behave in a very different ways;
- At iteration t, we could use the empirical variance of the log-weights to approximate I(λ_{t-1}), and decide the next exponent λ_t.

Practical implications

- If μ and π are IID distributions with d components, then $I(\lambda) = O(d)$. \Rightarrow Length of tempering sequence is $O(d^{1/2})$.
- the sequence (λ_t) may behave in a very different ways;
- At iteration t, we could use the empirical variance of the log-weights to approximate I(λ_{t-1}), and decide the next exponent λ_t.
- However, in practice, the usual ESS recipe works well too.

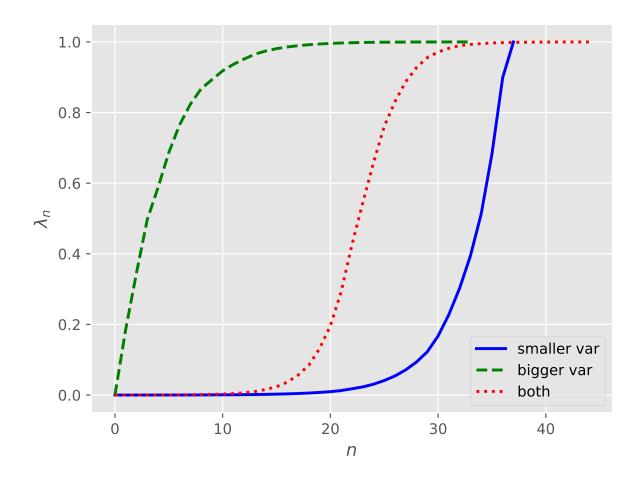


Figure 1: ESS-adapted tempering sequences, $\mu = N_d(0, I_d)$, $\pi = N_d(0, \Sigma)$, where $\Sigma = 10^2 I_d$ (bigger), $\Sigma = 10^{-2} I_d$ (smaller), and a mix of the two.

One can interpret tempering SMC as a numerical approximation of entropic mirror descent.

One can interpret tempering SMC as a numerical approximation of entropic mirror descent.

See the following manuscript for more details:

NC, crucinio F and Korba A (2023). A connection between Tempering and Entropic Mirror Descent, arXiv:2310.11914.

SQMC (Sequential quasi-Monte Carlo)

nicolas.chopin@ensae.fr (based on a previous PG course with O. Papaspiliopoulos)

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Particle filtering (a.k.a. Sequential Monte Carlo) is a set of *Monte Carlo* techniques for sequential inference in state-space models. The error rate of PF is therefore $\mathcal{O}_P(N^{-1/2})$.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Particle filtering (a.k.a. Sequential Monte Carlo) is a set of *Monte Carlo* techniques for sequential inference in state-space models. The error rate of PF is therefore $\mathcal{O}_P(N^{-1/2})$.

Quasi Monte Carlo (QMC) is a substitute for standard Monte Carlo (MC), which typically converges at the faster rate $\mathcal{O}(N^{-1+\epsilon})$. However, standard QMC is usually defined for IID problems.

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ● □

SQ (A

Particle filtering (a.k.a. Sequential Monte Carlo) is a set of *Monte Carlo* techniques for sequential inference in state-space models. The error rate of PF is therefore $\mathcal{O}_P(N^{-1/2})$.

Quasi Monte Carlo (QMC) is a substitute for standard Monte Carlo (MC), which typically converges at the faster rate $\mathcal{O}(N^{-1+\epsilon})$. However, standard QMC is usually defined for IID problems.

We derive a QMC version of PF, which we call SQMC (Sequential Quasi Monte Carlo).

◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ● □

SQ (A

Consider the standard MC approximation

$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(U^n)\approx\int_{[0,1]^d}\varphi(u)\mathrm{d}u$$

where the N vectors U^n are IID variables simulated from $\mathcal{U}([0,1]^d)$.

Consider the standard MC approximation

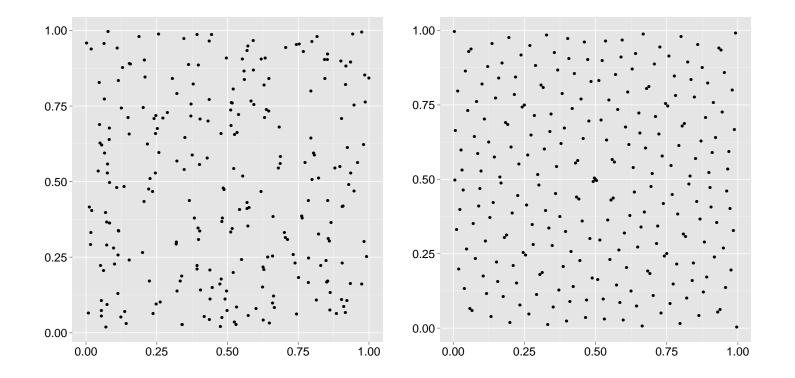
$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(U^n)\approx\int_{[0,1]^d}\varphi(u)\mathrm{d}u$$

where the N vectors U^n are IID variables simulated from $\mathcal{U}([0,1]^d)$.

QMC replaces $U^{1:N}$ by a set of N points that are more evenly distributed on the hyper-cube $[0,1]^d$. This idea is formalised through the notion of *discrepancy*.

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ▲ = ▶ ▲ = ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶

QMC vs MC in one plot



QMC versus MC: N = 256 points sampled independently and uniformly in $[0, 1]^2$ (left); QMC sequence (Sobol) in $[0, 1]^2$ of the same length (right)

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Koksma–Hlawka inequality:

$$\left|\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(u^n)-\int_{[0,1]^d}\varphi(u)\,\mathrm{d} u\right|\leq V(\varphi)D^{\star}(u^{1:N})$$

where $V(\varphi)$ depends only on φ , and the star discrepancy is defined as:

$$D^{\star}(u^{1:N}) = \sup_{[0,\boldsymbol{b}]} \left| \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \mathbb{1} \left(u^n \in [0,\boldsymbol{b}] \right) - \prod_{i=1}^{d} b_i \right|.$$

Koksma–Hlawka inequality:

$$\left|\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(u^n)-\int_{[0,1]^d}\varphi(u)\,\mathrm{d} u\right|\leq V(\varphi)D^{\star}(u^{1:N})$$

where $V(\varphi)$ depends only on φ , and the star discrepancy is defined as:

$$D^{\star}(u^{1:N}) = \sup_{[0,\boldsymbol{b}]} \left| \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \mathbb{1} \left(u^n \in [0,\boldsymbol{b}] \right) - \prod_{i=1}^{d} b_i \right|.$$

There are various ways to construct point sets $P_N = \{U^{1:N}\}$ so that $D^*(u^{1:N}) = \mathcal{O}(N^{-1+\epsilon})$.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● のへで

As a simple example of a low-discrepancy sequence in dimension one, d = 1, consider

$$\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{3}{8}, \frac{5}{8}, \frac{7}{8} \dots$$

or more generally,

$$\frac{1}{p},\ldots,\frac{p-1}{p},\frac{1}{p^2},\cdots$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

As a simple example of a low-discrepancy sequence in dimension one, d = 1, consider

$$\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{3}{8}, \frac{5}{8}, \frac{7}{8} \dots$$

or more generally,

$$\frac{1}{p},\ldots,\frac{p-1}{p},\frac{1}{p^2},\cdots$$

In dimension d > 1, a Halton sequence consists of a Van der Corput sequence for each component, with a different p for each component (the first d prime numbers).

◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ● □

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

RQMC (randomised QMC)

RQMC randomises QMC so that each $U^n \sim \mathcal{U}([0,1]^d)$ marginally. In this way

$$\mathbb{E}\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(U^{n})\right\} = \int_{[0,1]^{d}}\varphi(u)\,\mathrm{d}u$$

and one may evaluate the MSE through independent runs.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

RQMC (randomised QMC)

RQMC randomises QMC so that each $U^n \sim \mathcal{U}([0,1]^d)$ marginally. In this way

$$\mathbb{E}\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(U^{n})\right\} = \int_{[0,1]^{d}}\varphi(u)\,\mathrm{d}u$$

and one may evaluate the MSE through independent runs.

A simple way to generate a RQMC sequence is to take $U^n = W + V^n \equiv 1$, where $W \sim U([0, 1]^d)$ and $V^{1:N}$ is a QMC point set.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

RQMC (randomised QMC)

RQMC randomises QMC so that each $U^n \sim \mathcal{U}([0,1]^d)$ marginally. In this way

$$\mathbb{E}\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(U^{n})\right\} = \int_{[0,1]^{d}}\varphi(u)\,\mathrm{d} u$$

and one may evaluate the MSE through independent runs.

A simple way to generate a RQMC sequence is to take $U^n = W + V^n \equiv 1$, where $W \sim U([0, 1]^d)$ and $V^{1:N}$ is a QMC point set.

Owen (1995, 1997a, 1997b, 1998) developed RQMC strategies such that (for a certain class of smooth functions φ):

$$\operatorname{Var}\left\{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\varphi(U^{n})\right\} = \mathcal{O}(N^{-3+\epsilon})$$

Particle Filtering: Hidden Markov models

Consider an unobserved Markov chain (X_t) , $X_0 \sim m_0(dx_0)$ and

$$X_t | X_{t-1} = x_{t-1} \sim M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$$

taking values in $\mathcal{X} \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, and an observed process (Y_t) ,

 $Y_t|X_t \sim g(y_t|x_t).$

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

Consider an unobserved Markov chain (X_t) , $X_0 \sim m_0(dx_0)$ and

$$X_t | X_{t-1} = x_{t-1} \sim M_t(x_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_t)$$

taking values in $\mathcal{X} \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, and an observed process (Y_t) ,

 $Y_t|X_t \sim g(y_t|x_t).$

Sequential analysis of HMMs amounts to recover quantities such as $p(x_t|y_{0:t})$ (filtering), $p(x_{t+1}|y_{0:t})$ (prediction), $p(y_{0:t})$ (marginal likelihood), etc., recursively in time. Many applications in engineering (tracking), finance (stochastic volatility), epidemiology, ecology, neurosciences, etc.

Feynman-Kac formalism

Taking $G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) := g_t(y_t | x_t)$, we see that sequential analysis of a HMM may be cast into a Feynman-Kac model. In particular, *filtering* amounts to computing

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\varphi) = \frac{1}{Z_t} \mathbb{E}\left[\varphi(X_t) G_0(X_0) \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(X_{s-1}, X_s)\right],$$

with $Z_t = \mathbb{E}\left[G_0(X_0) \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(X_{s-1}, X_s)\right]$

and expectations are wrt the law of the Markov chain (X_t) .

▲□▶▲□▶▲□▶▲□▶ ▲□ ● ��

Feynman-Kac formalism

Taking $G_t(x_{t-1}, x_t) := g_t(y_t | x_t)$, we see that sequential analysis of a HMM may be cast into a Feynman-Kac model. In particular, *filtering* amounts to computing

$$\mathbb{Q}_t(\varphi) = \frac{1}{Z_t} \mathbb{E}\left[\varphi(X_t) G_0(X_0) \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(X_{s-1}, X_s)\right],$$

with $Z_t = \mathbb{E}\left[G_0(X_0) \prod_{s=1}^t G_s(X_{s-1}, X_s)\right]$

and expectations are wrt the law of the Markov chain (X_t) .

Note: FK formalism has other applications that sequential analysis of HMM. In addition, for a given HMM, there is a more than one way to define a Feynmann-Kac formulation of that model.

▲ □ ▶ ▲ □ ▶ ▲ □ ▶ ▲ □ ▶ ▲ □ ▶

SQ (A

Operations must be be performed for all $n \in 1 : N$. At time 0,

(a) Generate $X_0^n \sim M_0(dx_0)$. (b) Compute $W_0^n = G_0(X_0^n) / \sum_{m=1}^N G_0(X_0^m)$. Recursively, for time t = 1 : T, (a) Generate $A_{t-1}^n \sim \mathcal{M}(W_{t-1}^{1:N})$. (b) Generate $X_t^n \sim M_t(X_{t-1}^{A_{t-1}^n}, dx_t)$. (c) Compute $W_t^n = G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_{t-1}^n}, X_t^n) / \sum_{m=1}^N G_t(X_{t-1}^{A_{t-1}^m}, X_t^m)$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ■ のへ⊙

We can formalise the succession of Steps (a), (b) and (c) at iteration t as an importance sampling step from random probability measure

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d}\widetilde{x}_{t-1}) M_{t}(\widetilde{x}_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_{t})$$
(1)

to

 $\{\text{same thing}\} \times G_t(\widetilde{x}_{t-1}, x_t).$

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

We can formalise the succession of Steps (a), (b) and (c) at iteration t as an importance sampling step from random probability measure

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d}\widetilde{x}_{t-1}) M_{t}(\widetilde{x}_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_{t})$$
(1)

to

$$\{\text{same thing}\} \times G_t(\widetilde{x}_{t-1}, x_t).$$

Idea: use QMC instead of MC to sample N points from (1); i.e. rewrite sampling from (1) this as a function of uniform variables, and use low-discrepancy sequences instead.

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

Intermediate step

More precisely, we are going to write the simulation from

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d}\widetilde{x}_{t-1}) M_{t}(\widetilde{x}_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_{t})$$

as a function of $U_t^n = (u_t^n, V_t^n)$, $u_t^n \in [0, 1]$, $V_t^n \in [0, 1]^d$, such that:

- We will use the scalar u_t^n to choose the ancestor \widetilde{X}_{t-1} .
- 2 We will use V_t^n to generate X_t^n as

$$X_t^n = \Gamma_t(\widetilde{X}_{t-1}, V_t^n)$$

where Γ_t is a deterministic function such that, for $V_t^n \sim \mathcal{U}[0,1]^d$, $\Gamma_t(\widetilde{X}_{t-1}, V_t^n) \sim M_t(\widetilde{X}_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_t)$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ▲□▶ ◆○

Intermediate step

More precisely, we are going to write the simulation from

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d} \widetilde{x}_{t-1}) M_{t}(\widetilde{x}_{t-1}, \mathrm{d} x_{t})$$

as a function of $U_t^n = (u_t^n, V_t^n)$, $u_t^n \in [0, 1]$, $V_t^n \in [0, 1]^d$, such that:

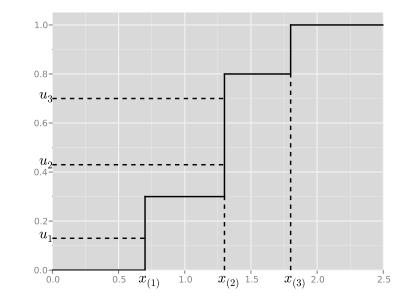
- We will use the scalar u_t^n to choose the ancestor \widetilde{X}_{t-1} .
- 2 We will use V_t^n to generate X_t^n as

$$X_t^n = \Gamma_t(\widetilde{X}_{t-1}, V_t^n)$$

where Γ_t is a deterministic function such that, for $V_t^n \sim \mathcal{U}[0,1]^d$, $\Gamma_t(\widetilde{X}_{t-1}, V_t^n) \sim M_t(\widetilde{X}_{t-1}, \mathrm{d}x_t)$.

The main problem is point 1.

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ▲ = ▶ ▲ = ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶



Simply use the inverse transform method: $\tilde{X}_{t-1}^n = \hat{F}^{-1}(u_t^n)$, where \hat{F} is the empirical cdf of

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d} \widetilde{X}_{t-1}).$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

590

When d > 1, we cannot use the inverse CDF method to sample from the empirical distribution

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d} \widetilde{x}_{t-1}).$$

Idea: we "project" the X_{t-1}^n 's into [0,1] through the (generalised) inverse of the *Hilbert curve*, which is a fractal, space-filling curve $H: [0,1] \rightarrow [0,1]^d$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

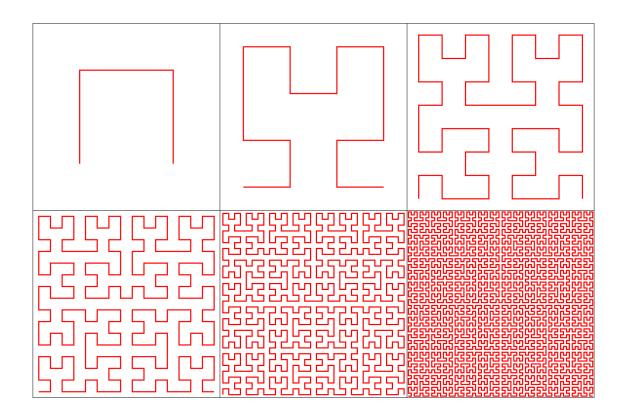
When d > 1, we cannot use the inverse CDF method to sample from the empirical distribution

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} W_{t-1}^{n} \delta_{X_{t-1}^{n}} (\mathrm{d} \widetilde{x}_{t-1}).$$

Idea: we "project" the X_{t-1}^n 's into [0,1] through the (generalised) inverse of the *Hilbert curve*, which is a fractal, space-filling curve $H: [0,1] \rightarrow [0,1]^d$.

More precisely, we transform \mathcal{X} into $[0,1]^d$ through some function ψ , then we transform $[0,1]^d$ into [0,1] through $h = H^{-1}$.

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ▲ = ▶ ▲ = ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶



The Hilbert curve is the limit of this sequence. Note the locality property of the Hilbert curve: if two points are close in [0, 1], then the the corresponding transformed points remains close in $[0, 1]^d$. (Source for the plot: Wikipedia)

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ →

3

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

SQMC Algorithm

At time 0,

(a) Generate a QMC point set $U_0^{1:N}$ in $[0,1]^d$, and compute $X_0^n = \Gamma_0(U_0^n)$. (e.g. $\Gamma_0 = F_{m_0}^{-1}$) (b) Compute $W_0^n = G_0(X_0^n) / \sum_{m=1}^N G_0(X_0^m)$.

Recursively, for time t = 1: T,

- (a) Generate a QMC point set $U_t^{1:N}$ in $[0, 1]^{d+1}$; let $U_t^n = (u_t^n, V_t^n)$.
- (b) Hilbert sort: find permutation σ such that $\circ \psi(X_{t-1}^{\sigma(1)}) \leq \ldots \leq \circ \psi(X_{t-1}^{\sigma(N)}).$

(c) Generate $a_{t-1}^{1:N}$ using inverse CDF Algorithm, with inputs sort $(u_t^{1:N})$ and $W_{t-1}^{\sigma(1:N)}$, and compute $X_t^n = \Gamma_t(X_{t-1}^{\sigma(a_{t-1}^n)}, V_t^{\sigma(n)})$. (e.g. $\Gamma_t = F_{M_t}^{-1}$)

(e) Compute

$$W_t^n = G_t(X_{t-1}^{\sigma(a_{t-1}^n)}, X_t^n) / \sum_{m=1}^N G_t(X_{t-1}^{\sigma(a_{t-1}^m)}, X_t^m).$$

玊

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

• Because two sort operations are performed, the complexity of SQMC is $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$. (Compare with $\mathcal{O}(N)$ for SMC.)

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲□ ● のへで

- Because two sort operations are performed, the complexity of SQMC is $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$. (Compare with $\mathcal{O}(N)$ for SMC.)
- The main requirement to implement SQMC is that one may simulate from Markov kernel M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t) by computing X_t = Γ_t(X_{t-1},t), where t ~ U[0,1]^d, for some deterministic function Γ_t (e.g. multivariate inverse CDF).

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ●

SQ (A

- Because two sort operations are performed, the complexity of SQMC is $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$. (Compare with $\mathcal{O}(N)$ for SMC.)
- The main requirement to implement SQMC is that one may simulate from Markov kernel M_t(x_{t-1}, dx_t) by computing X_t = Γ_t(X_{t-1},t), where t ~ U[0,1]^d, for some deterministic function Γ_t (e.g. multivariate inverse CDF).
- The dimension of the point sets $t^{1:N}$ is 1 + d: first component is for selecting the parent particle, the *d* remaining components is for sampling X_t^n given $X_{t-1}^{a_{t-1}^n}$.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ▲□▶ ◆○

• If we use RQMC (randomised QMC) point sets $t^{1:N}$, then SQMC generates an unbiased estimate of the marginal likelihood Z_t .

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

- If we use RQMC (randomised QMC) point sets $t^{1:N}$, then SQMC generates an unbiased estimate of the marginal likelihood Z_t .
- This means we can use SQMC within the *PMCMC* framework. (More precisely, we can run e.g. a PMMH algorithm, where the likelihood of the data is computed via SQMC instead of SMC.)

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

- If we use RQMC (randomised QMC) point sets $t^{1:N}$, then SQMC generates an unbiased estimate of the marginal likelihood Z_t .
- This means we can use SQMC within the *PMCMC* framework. (More precisely, we can run e.g. a PMMH algorithm, where the likelihood of the data is computed via SQMC instead of SMC.)
- We can also adapt quite easily the different particle smoothing algorithms: forward smoothing, backward smoothing, two-filter smoothing.

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

- If we use RQMC (randomised QMC) point sets $t^{1:N}$, then SQMC generates an unbiased estimate of the marginal likelihood Z_t .
- This means we can use SQMC within the *PMCMC* framework. (More precisely, we can run e.g. a PMMH algorithm, where the likelihood of the data is computed via SQMC instead of SMC.)
- We can also adapt quite easily the different particle smoothing algorithms: forward smoothing, backward smoothing, two-filter smoothing.

 $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$

We were able to establish the following types of results: *consistency*

$$\mathbb{Q}_t^N(\varphi) - \mathbb{Q}_t(\varphi) \to 0, \quad \text{as } N \to +\infty$$

for certain functions $\varphi,$ and rate of convergence

$$\mathrm{MSE}\left[\mathbb{Q}_t^N(\varphi)\right] = o(N^{-1})$$

(under technical conditions, and for certain types of RQMC point sets).

Theory is non-standard and borrows heavily from QMC concepts.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ - 三

SQ (A

Let $\mathcal{X} = [0, 1]^d$. Consistency results are expressed in terms of the star norm

$$\|\mathbb{Q}_t^N - \mathbb{Q}_t\|_{\star} = \sup_{[0,\boldsymbol{b}] \subset [0,1)^d} \left| \left(\mathbb{Q}_t^N - \mathbb{Q}_t \right) (B) \right| \to 0.$$

This implies consistency for bounded functions φ , $\mathbb{Q}_t^N(\varphi) - \mathbb{Q}_t(\varphi) \to 0.$ The Hilbert curve conserves discrepancy:

$$\|\pi^{N} - \pi\|_{\star} \to 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \|\pi_{h}^{N} - \pi_{h}\|_{\star} \to 0$$

where $\pi \in \mathcal{P}([0,1]^d)$, $h: [0,1]^d \to [0,1]$ is the (pseudo-)inverse of the Hilbert curve, and π_h is the image of π through π .

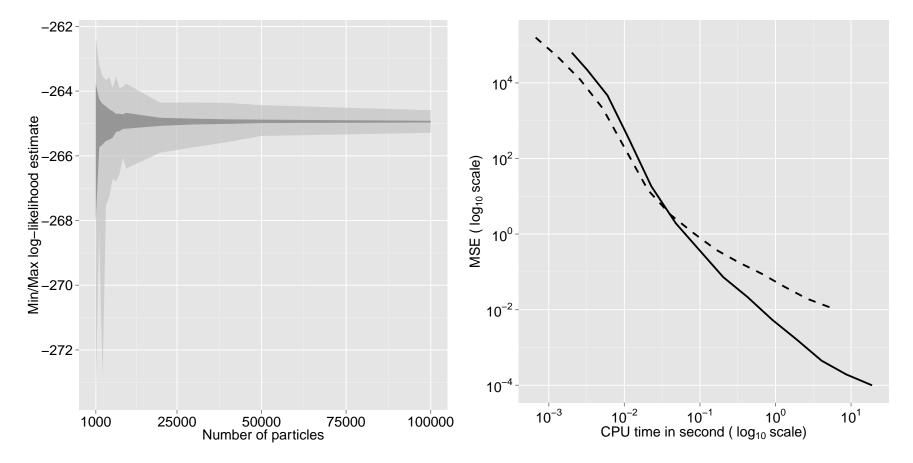
◆□▶ ◆□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ▲□▶ ◆○

Well known toy example (Kitagawa, 1998):

$$\begin{cases} y_t = \frac{x_t^2}{a} + \epsilon_t \\ x_t = b_1 x_{t-1} + b_2 \frac{x_{t-1}}{1 + x_{t-1}^2} + b_3 \cos(b_4 t) + \sigma \nu_t \end{cases}$$

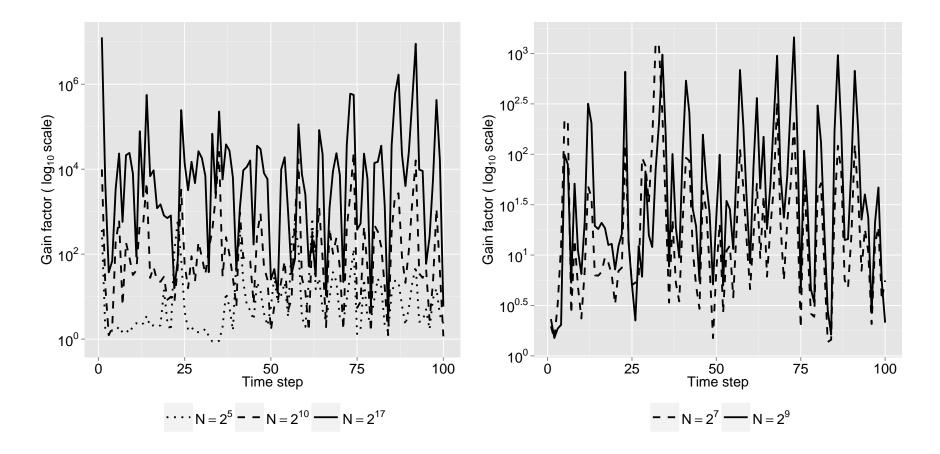
No paramater estimation (parameters are set to their true value). We compare SQMC with SMC (based on systematic resampling) both in terms of N, and in terms of CPU time.

◆□ ▶ ◆□ ▶ ▲ = ▶ ▲ = ▶ ◆ □ ▶ ◆ □ ▶



Log-likelihood evaluation (based on T = 100 data point and 500 independent SMC and SQMC runs).

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □



Filtering: computing $\mathbb{E}(X_t|_{0:t})$ at each iteration t. Gain factor is MSE(SMC)/MSE(SQMC).

<ロ > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 > < 0 >

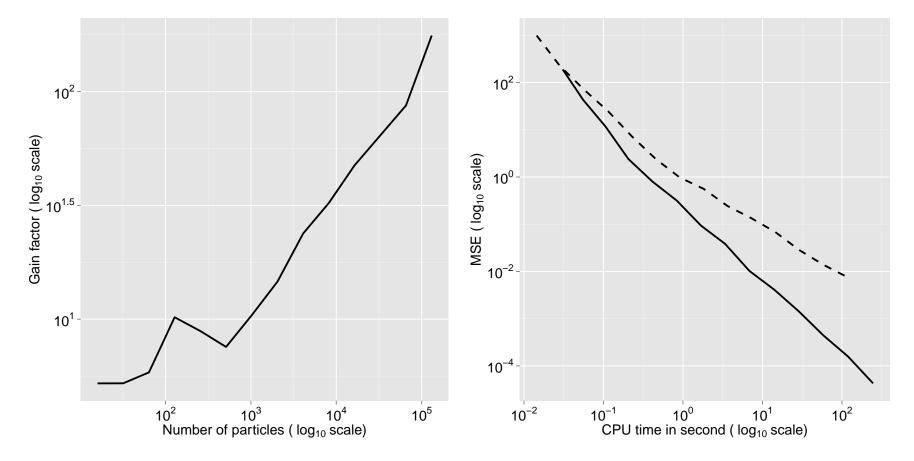
Ξ.

Model is

$$egin{aligned} & \displaystyle iggl\{ t=S_t^{rac{1}{2}} \epsilon_t \ & X_t= oldsymbol{\mu} + \Phi(X_{t-1}-oldsymbol{\mu}) + \Psi^{rac{1}{2}} oldsymbol{
u}_t \end{aligned}$$

with possibly correlated noise terms: $(\epsilon_t, \nu_t) \sim N_{2d}(0, \boldsymbol{C})$. We shall focus on d = 2 and d = 4.

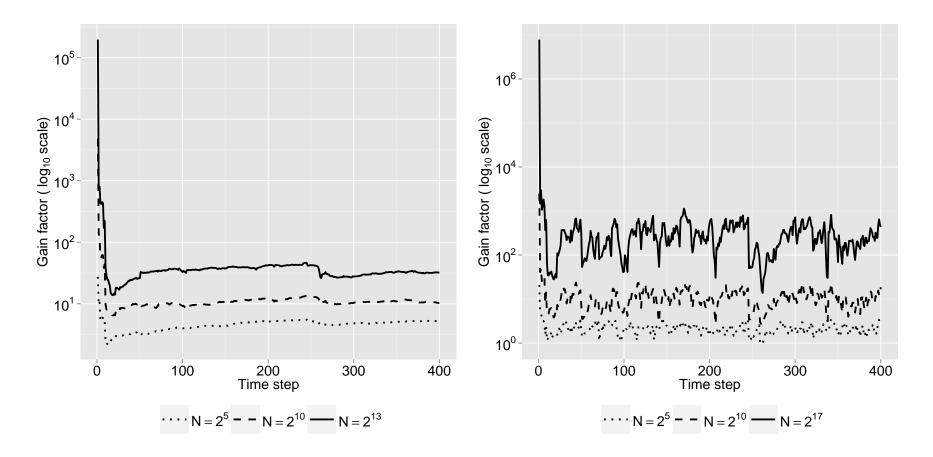
Examples: Multivariate Stochastic Volatility (d = 2)



Log-likelihood evaluation (based on T = 400 data points and 200 independent runs).

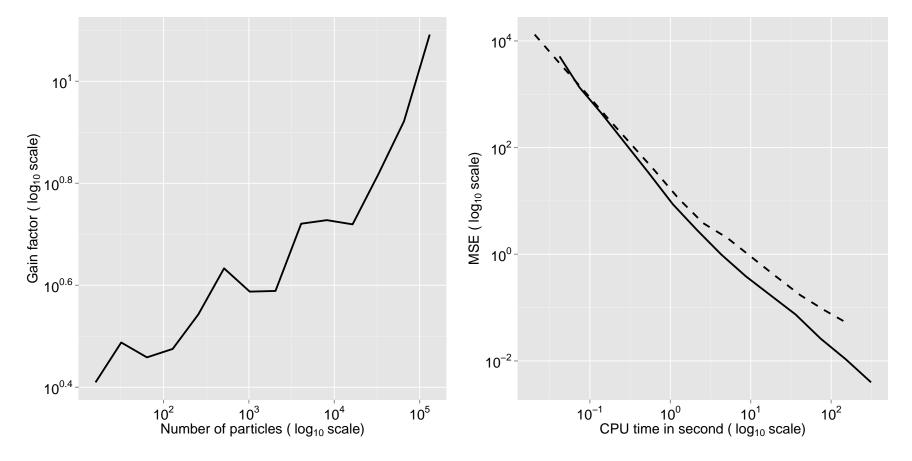
<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Examples: Multivariate Stochastic Volatility (d = 2)



Log-likelihood evaluation (left) and filtering (right) as a function of *t*.

Examples: Multivariate Stochastic Volatility (d = 4)



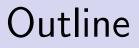
Log-likelihood estimation (based on T = 400 data points and 200 independent runs)

<ロト < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < 回 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

- Only requirement to replace SMC with SQMC is that the simulation of $X_t^n | X_{t-1}^n$ may be written as a $X_t^n = \Gamma_t(X_{t-1}^n, t^n)$ where $\frac{n}{t} \sim U[0, 1]^d$.
- We observe very impressive gains in performance (even for small N or d = 6).
- Supporting theory.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆三▶ ◆三▶ ● ● ●

SMC^2







Preliminary

So far, we have played with replacing intractable quantities with unbiased estimates within Metropolis samplers. Note however we could do the same within an importance sampler. For instance, the following approach has been used in Chopin and Robert (2007).

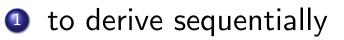
To compute the evidence p(y) of some state-space model

- Sample points θ^n from the prior $p(\theta)$.
- For each θ^n , run a PF (for fixed $\theta = \theta^n$) to obtain an estimate $\hat{p}(y|\theta^n)$ of the likelihood.

• Compute

$$\hat{p}(y) = rac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \hat{p}(y| heta^n)$$





$$p(\mathrm{d}\theta,\mathrm{d}x_{0:t}|Y_{0:t}=y_{0:t}),\quad p(y_{0:t}),\quad ext{for all }t\in\{0,\ldots,T\}$$

2 to obtain a black box algorithm (automatic calibration).

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Main tools of our approach

- Particle filter algorithms for state-space models (this will be to estimate the likelihood, for a fixed θ).
- Iterated Batch Importance Sampling for sequential Bayesian inference for parameters (this will be the theoretical algorithm we will try to approximate).

Both are sequential Monte Carlo (SMC) methods.

IBIS (C., 2001)

SMC method for particle approximation of the sequence $p(\theta|y_{0:t})$, t = 0 : T. Based on the sequence of importance sampling steps:

$$\frac{p(\theta|y_{0:t})}{p(\theta|y_{0:t-1})} \propto p(y_t|y_{0:t-1},\theta)$$

but doing only IS steps would not well. Resampling alone will not help, because θ is not an ergodic process.

⇒ introduces an artificial dynamics by moving the θ particles through a MCMC step (that leaves $p(\theta|y_{0:t})$ invariant). In next slide, operations with superscript m must be understood as operations performed for all $m \in 1 : N_{\theta}$, where N_{θ} is the total number of θ -particles. Sample θ^m from $p(\theta)$ and set $\omega^m \leftarrow 1$. Then, at time t = 0, ..., T(a) Compute incremental weights

$$u_t(\theta^m) = p(y_t|y_{0:t-1}, \theta^m), \quad L_t = rac{1}{\sum_{m=1}^{N_\theta} \omega^m} imes \sum_{m=1}^{N_\theta} \omega^m u_t(\theta^m),$$

(b) Update the importance weights,

$$\omega^m \leftarrow \omega^m u_t(\theta^m). \tag{1}$$

(c) If some degeneracy criterion is fulfilled, sample $\tilde{\theta}^m$ independently from the mixture distribution

$$\frac{1}{\sum_{m=1}^{N_{\theta}} \omega^{m}} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\theta}} \omega^{m} K_{t}\left(\theta^{m}, \cdot\right).$$

Finally, replace the current weighted particle system:

$$(heta^m, \omega^m) \leftarrow (ilde{ heta}^m, 1).$$

Observations

- Cost of lack of ergodicity in θ : the occasional MCMC move
- Still, in regular problems resampling happens at diminishing frequency (logarithmically)
- K_t is an MCMC kernel invariant wrt $\pi(\theta \mid y_{1:t})$. Its parameters can be chosen using information from current population of θ -particles
- L_t is a MC estimator of the model evidence
- Infeasible to implement for state-space models: intractable incremental weights, and MCMC kernel

Our algorithm: SMC²

We provide a generic (black box) algorithm for recovering the sequence of parameter posterior distributions, but as well filtering, smoothing and predictive.

We give next a pseudo-code; the code seems to only track the parameter posteriors, but actually it does all other jobs. Superficially, it looks an approximation of IBIS, but in fact it does not produce any systematic errors (unbiased MC). Sample θ^m from $p(\theta)$ and set $\omega^m \leftarrow 1$. Then, at time $t = 0, \ldots, T$,

(a) For each particle θ^m , perform iteration t of the PF: If t = 0, sample independently $X_0^{1:N_x,m}$ from ψ_{0,θ^m} , and compute

$$\hat{p}(y_0|\theta^m) = rac{1}{N_x} \sum_{n=1}^{N_x} w_0^{\theta}(x_0^{n,m});$$

If
$$t > 0$$
, sample $\left(X_t^{1:N_x,m}, A_t^{1:N_x,m}\right)$ from ψ_{t,θ^m}
conditional on $\left(X_{0:t-1}^{1:N_x,m}, A_{1:t-1}^{1:N_x,m}\right)$, and compute

$$\hat{\rho}(y_t|y_{1:t-1}, \theta^m) = \frac{1}{N_x} \sum_{n=1}^{N_x} w_t^{\theta}(X_{t-1}^{A_t^{n,m},m}, X_t^{n,m}).$$

(b) Update the importance weights,

$$\omega^{m} \leftarrow \omega^{m} \hat{p}(y_t | y_{0:t-1}, \theta^{m})$$

(c) If some degeneracy criterion is fulfilled, sample $\left(\tilde{\theta}^{m}, \tilde{X}_{0:t}^{1:N_{x},m}, \tilde{A}_{1:t}^{1:N_{x}}\right)$ independently from

$$\frac{1}{\sum_{m=1}^{N_{\theta}} \omega^{m}} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\theta}} \omega^{m} K_{t} \left\{ \left(\theta^{m}, x_{0:t}^{1:N_{x},m}, a_{1:t}^{1:N_{x},m} \right), \cdot \right\}$$

Finally, replace current weighted particle system:

$$(\theta^m, X_{0:t}^{1:N_x,m}, A_{1:t}^{1:N_x,m}, \omega^m) \leftarrow (\tilde{\theta}^m, \tilde{X}_{0:t}^{1:N_x,m}, \tilde{A}_{1:t-1}^{1:N_x,m}, 1)$$

Observations

- It appears as approximation to IBIS. For $N_x = \infty$ it is IBIS.
- However, no approximation is done whatsoever. This algorithm really samples from $p(\theta|y_{0:t})$ and all other distributions of interest.
- The validity of algorithm is essentially based on two results: i) the particles are weighted due to unbiasedness of PF estimator of likelihood; ii) the MCMC kernel is appropriately constructed to maintain invariance wrt to an expanded distribution which admits those of interest as marginals; it is a Particle MCMC kernel.
- The algorithm does not suffer from the path degeneracy problem due to the MCMC updates.

The MCMC step

(a) Sample $\tilde{\theta}$ from proposal kernel, $\tilde{\theta} \sim h(\theta, d\tilde{\theta})$.

(b) Run a new PF for $\tilde{\theta}$: sample independently $(\tilde{X}_{0:t}^{1:N_x}, \tilde{A}_{1:t}^{1:N_x})$ from $\psi_{t,\tilde{\theta}}$, and compute $\hat{L}_t(\tilde{\theta}, \tilde{X}_{0:t}^{1:N_x}, \tilde{A}_{1:t-1}^{1:N_x})$.

(c) Accept the move with probability

$$1 \wedge \frac{p(\tilde{\theta})\hat{L}_t(\tilde{\theta}, \tilde{X}_{0:t}^{1:N_x}, \tilde{A}_{1:t}^{1:N_x})h(\tilde{\theta}, \theta)}{p(\theta)\hat{L}_t(\theta, X_{0:t}^{1:N_x}, A_{1:t}^{1:N_x})h(\theta, \tilde{\theta})}$$

It can be shown that this is a standard Hastings-Metropolis kernel with proposal

$$q_{\theta}(\tilde{\theta}, \tilde{x}_{0:t}^{1:N_{x}}, \tilde{a}_{1:t}^{1:N_{x}}) = h(\theta, \tilde{\theta})\psi_{t,\tilde{\theta}}(\tilde{x}_{0:t}^{1:N_{x}}, \tilde{a}_{1:t}^{1:N_{x}})$$

invariant w.r.t. to an extended distribution $\pi_t(\theta, x_{0:t}^{1:N_x}, a_{1:t}^{1:N_x})$.

Some advantages of the algorithm

- Immediate estimates of filtering and predictive distributions
- Immediate and sequential estimator of model evidence.
- Easy recovery of smoothing distributions.
- Principled framework for automatic calibration of N_{x} .
- Population Monte Carlo advantages.

Validity

SMC² is simply a SMC sampler with respect to the sequence:

 $\pi_t(\mathrm{d}\theta,\mathrm{d}x^{1:N_x}_{0:t},\mathrm{d}a^{1:N_x}_{1:t})$

- the reweighting step $t 1 \rightarrow t$ (a) extends the dimension, by sampling $X_t^{1:N}$, $a_t^{1:N}$; and (b) computes $\pi_t(\cdot)/\pi_{t-1}(\cdot)$.
- The move step is a PMCMC step that leaves π_t invariant.

Technical point

As in PMCMC, one may extend π_t by adding index k that picks some trajectory, which, jointly with θ , is sampled from the current posterior $p(\theta, x_{0:t}|y_{0:t})$. However, it is more difficult to define an importance sampling step with respect to the extended space (that includes k), so, we must discard k before progressing to time t + 1.

How to choose N_x ?

PMCMC: valid whatever N_x , but one needs to take $N_x = O(T)$ in order to obtain a non-negligible acceptance rate. This is related to the following type of results (Cérou et al, 2011; Whiteley, 2011):

$$\operatorname{Var}[\hat{p}(y_{0:T}|\theta)] \leq \frac{CT}{N_{x}}$$

For SMC², this suggests that one should start with a small value, then increases N_x progressively. But:

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

- how to increase N_x at a given time?
- **2** when should we increase N_x ?

How to increase N_x

Two possible strategies to replace our PF's of size N_x with PF's of size N'_x at iteration t:

- exchange step: generate a new PF of size N'_x , then do an importance sampling step in order to swap the old PF and the new PF.
- 2 a CSMC (Particle Gibbs step), when we select one trajectory, throw away the $N_x 1$ remaining ones, and regenerate $N'_x 1$ new trajectories using CSMC.

The latter should suffer less from weigh degeneracy, but it suffers from a higher memory cost, i.e. $O(TN_xN_\theta)$ at time t.

When to increase N_x ?

Currently, we monitor the acceptance rate of the PMCMC rejuvenation step; when it's too small, we trigger an exchange step (from N_x to $2N_x$).

We're working on more refined versions based on PG steps, and better criteria to determine when and by how much we should increase N_x (on-going work).

Complexity

The overall complexity of SMC² is $O(N_{\theta}T^2)$ if run until time T:

- The cost of iteration t without a rejuvenation step is $O(N_{\theta}N_{x})$;
- 2 as explained before, we need to increase N_x progressively, $N_x = O(t)$;
- 3 The cost of the PMCMC rejuvenation step is $O(tN_{\theta}N_x)$, but we obtained the following result: if it is triggered whenever ESS< γ , and $N_x = O(t)$, then the occurence times are geometric (τ^k , k = 1, 2, ...).

Numerical illustrations: SV

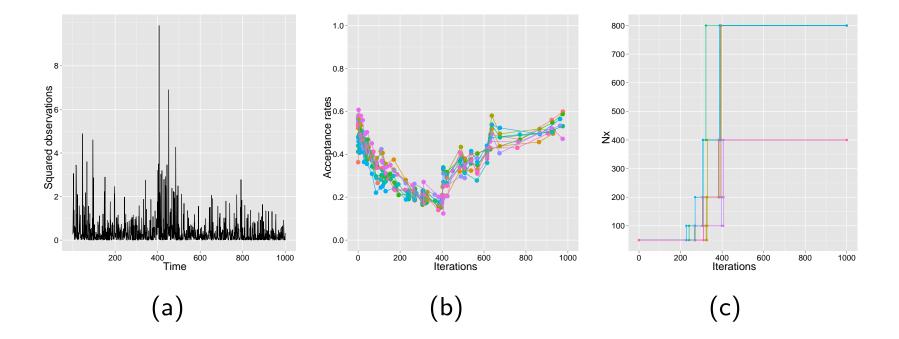


Figure: Squared observations (synthetic data set), acceptance rates, and illustration of the automatic increase of N_x .

See the model

Numerical illustrations: SV

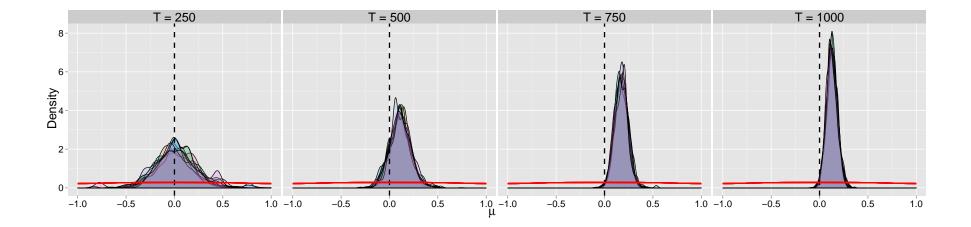


Figure: Concentration of the posterior distribution for parameter μ .

Numerical illustrations: SV

Multifactor model

$$y_t = \mu + \beta v_t + v_t^{1/2} \epsilon_t + \rho_1 \sum_{j=1}^{k_1} e_{1,j} + \rho_2 \sum_{j=1}^{k_2} e_{2,j} - \xi(w \rho_1 \lambda_1 + (1-w)\rho_2 \lambda_2)$$

where $v_t = v_{1,t} + v_{2,t}$, and $(v_i, z_i)_{n=1,2}$ are following the same dynamics with parameters $(w_i\xi, w_i\omega^2, \lambda_i)$ and $w_1 = w$, $w_2 = 1 - w$.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● の Q @

Numerical illustrations: SV

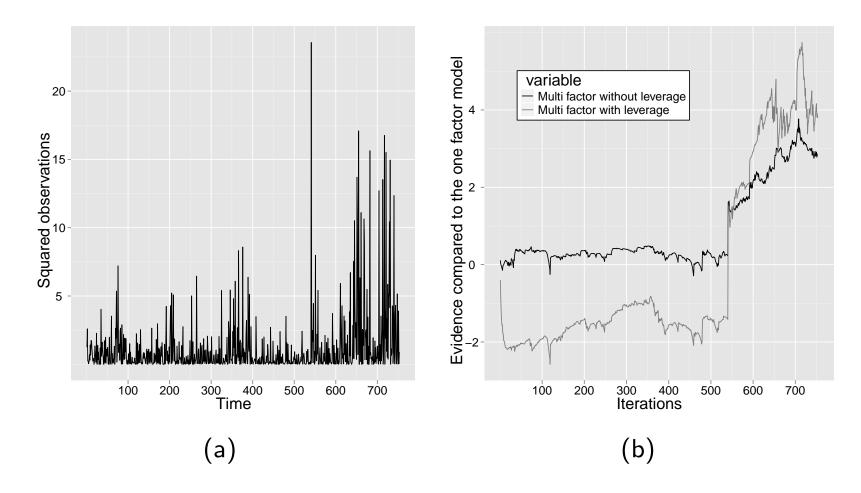


Figure: S&P500 squared observations, and log-evidence comparison between models (relative to the one-factor model).

Numerical illustrations

Athletics records model

$$g(y_{1:2,t}|\mu_t,\xi,\sigma) = \{1 - G(y_{2,t}|\mu_t,\xi,\sigma)\} \prod_{n=1}^2 \frac{g(y_{i,t}|\mu_t,\xi,\sigma)}{1 - G(y_{i,t}|\mu_t,\xi,\sigma)}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_t = (\mu_t, \dot{\mu}_t)', \quad \mathbf{x}_{t+1} \mid \mathbf{x}_t, \nu \sim \mathcal{N}(F\mathbf{x}_t, Q),$$

with

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } Q = \nu^2 \begin{pmatrix} 1/3 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$G(y|\mu,\xi,\sigma) = 1 - \exp\left[-\left\{1 - \xi\left(\frac{y-\mu}{\sigma}\right)\right\}_+^{-1/\xi}\right]$$

Numerical illustrations

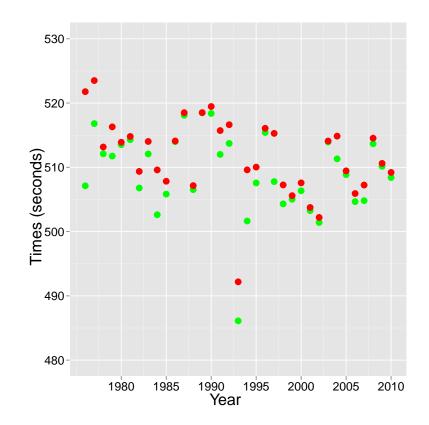


Figure: Best two times of each year, in women's 3000 metres events between 1976 and 2010.

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆ □▶ ◆ □▶ ● □ ● ● ● ●

Numerical illustrations: Athletics records

Motivating question

How unlikely is Wang Junxia's record in 1993?

A smoothing problem

We want to estimate the likelihood of Wang Junxia's record in 1993, given that we observe a better time than the previous world record. We want to use all the observations from 1976 to 2010 to answer the question.

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □ ● の < @

Note

We exclude observations from the year 1993.



Numerical illustrations

Some probabilities of interest

$$D_t^y = \mathbb{P}(y_t \le y | y_{1976:2010})$$

= $\int_{\Theta} \int_{\mathcal{X}} G(y | \mu_t, \theta) p(\mu_t | y_{1976:2010}, \theta) p(\theta | y_{1976:2010}) d\mu_t d\theta$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲三▶ ▲三▶ ▲□ ▶ ④ ♥ ♥

The interest lies in $p_{1993}^{486.11}$, $p_{1993}^{502.62}$ and $p_t^{cond} := p_t^{486.11} / p_t^{502.62}$.

SMC² 0000000000000000000000000000

Numerical illustrations

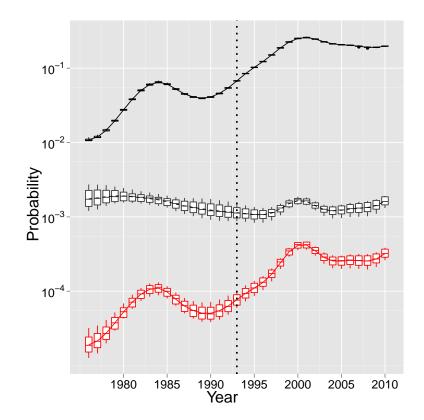


Figure: Estimates of the probability of interest (top) $p_t^{502.62}$, (middle) p_t^{cond} and (bottom) $p_t^{486.11}$, obtained with the SMC²algorithm. The *y*-axis is in log scale, and the dotted line indicates the year 1993 which motivated the study.